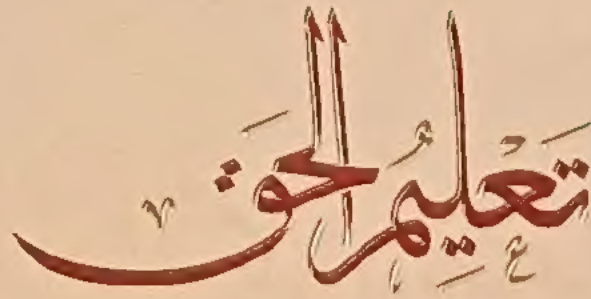




Revised & Improved
edition with illustrations and
colour coded chapters.



Ta'leemul Haq

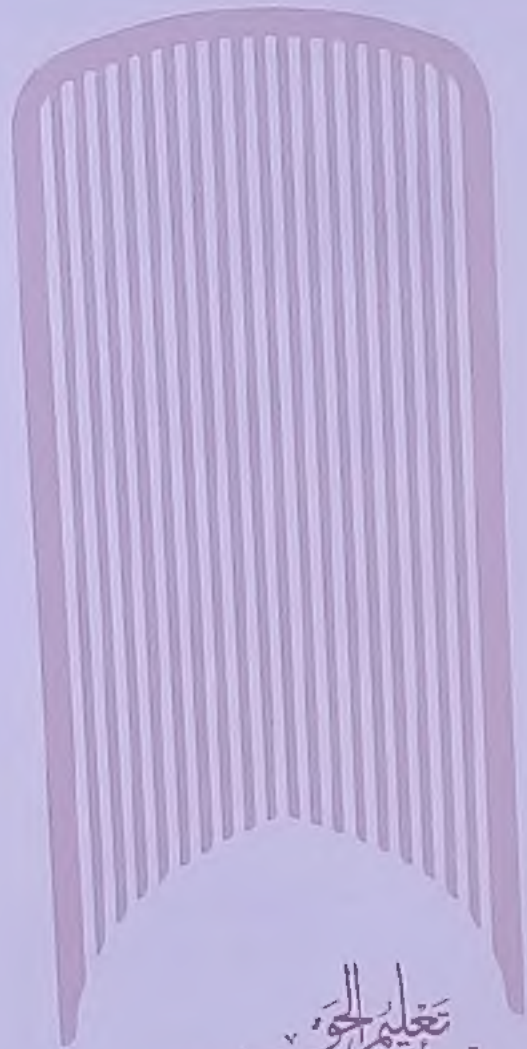
An authentic compilation on the
Five fundamentals of Islam.

Learn ♦ Practice ♦ Propagate



Shabbir Ahmed E. Desai

Madrasah Da'watul Haq, Umzinto



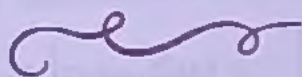
تَعْلِيمُ الْحَقِّ
Ta'leemul
Haq

تَعْلِيمُ الْحَقِّ

Ta'leemul Haq

An authentic compilation on the
Five fundamentals of Islam.

Learn ♦ Practice ♦ Propagate



Shabbir Ahmed E. Desai
Madrasah Da'watul Haq, Umzinto



اداره امپیکس
idara impex

Publishers | Distributors | Exporters

© idara

No Part of this book may be reproduced or utilised in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical including photo copying, recording or by any information storage and retrieval system without permission in writing from the Publisher.

TA'LEEMUL HAQ

By:

Shabbir Ahmed E. Desai
Madrasah Da'watul Haq, Umzinto

Typesetted & Designed by:

Hafiz NIZAMUDDIN Hardoi (Idara Impex)



Edition : 2022

ISBN 81-9511-906-9

TP-1008-22

Published by Mohammad Yunus for



اداره امپیکس
idara impex

Publishers | Distributors | Exporters

D-80, Abul Fazal Enclave-I
Jamia Nagar, New Delhi-110 025 (India)
Tel.: +91-11-2695 6832 / 33 & 085888 33786
Email: info@idara.com | www.idara.com

Retail Shop: IDARA ISHA'AT-E-DINIYAT (P) LTD
Shop No. 4/165 GF, Near Karim's Hotel, Hazrat Nizamuddin
New Delhi-13 (India) Tel.: 085888 44786 www.idara.com

Table of Contents

Foreword	3
Introduction	5
Chapter 1: The Islamic Perspective on Business	11
Chapter 2: The Islamic Perspective on Finance	21
Chapter 3: The Islamic Perspective on Banking	31
Chapter 4: The Islamic Perspective on Insurance	41
Chapter 5: The Islamic Perspective on Investment	51
Chapter 6: The Islamic Perspective on Trade	61
Chapter 7: The Islamic Perspective on Labor	71
Chapter 8: The Islamic Perspective on Taxation	81
Chapter 9: The Islamic Perspective on Charity	91
Chapter 10: The Islamic Perspective on Social Justice	101
Chapter 11: The Islamic Perspective on Environmental Protection	111
Chapter 12: The Islamic Perspective on International Relations	121
Chapter 13: The Islamic Perspective on Human Rights	131
Chapter 14: The Islamic Perspective on Women's Rights	141
Chapter 15: The Islamic Perspective on Children's Rights	151
Chapter 16: The Islamic Perspective on the Elderly	161
Chapter 17: The Islamic Perspective on the Disabled	171
Chapter 18: The Islamic Perspective on the Poor	181
Chapter 19: The Islamic Perspective on the Sick	191
Chapter 20: The Islamic Perspective on the Dying	201
Chapter 21: The Islamic Perspective on the Afterlife	211
Chapter 22: The Islamic Perspective on the Day of Judgment	221
Chapter 23: The Islamic Perspective on the Resurrection	231
Chapter 24: The Islamic Perspective on the Final Hour	241
Chapter 25: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Day	251
Chapter 26: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Hour	261
Chapter 27: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Minute	271
Chapter 28: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Second	281
Chapter 29: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Breath	291
Chapter 30: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Thought	301
Chapter 31: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Word	311
Chapter 32: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Deed	321
Chapter 33: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Act	331
Chapter 34: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Movement	341
Chapter 35: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Position	351
Chapter 36: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Place	361
Chapter 37: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Time	371
Chapter 38: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Moment	381
Chapter 39: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Instant	391
Chapter 40: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Fraction	401
Chapter 41: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Part	411
Chapter 42: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Piece	421
Chapter 43: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Bit	431
Chapter 44: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Drop	441
Chapter 45: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Grain	451
Chapter 46: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Seed	461
Chapter 47: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Spark	471
Chapter 48: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Flame	481
Chapter 49: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Light	491
Chapter 50: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Sound	501
Chapter 51: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Color	511
Chapter 52: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Taste	521
Chapter 53: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Smell	531
Chapter 54: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Feeling	541
Chapter 55: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Thought	551
Chapter 56: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Word	561
Chapter 57: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Deed	571
Chapter 58: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Act	581
Chapter 59: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Movement	591
Chapter 60: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Position	601
Chapter 61: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Place	611
Chapter 62: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Time	621
Chapter 63: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Moment	631
Chapter 64: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Instant	641
Chapter 65: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Fraction	651
Chapter 66: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Part	661
Chapter 67: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Piece	671
Chapter 68: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Bit	681
Chapter 69: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Drop	691
Chapter 70: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Grain	701
Chapter 71: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Seed	711
Chapter 72: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Spark	721
Chapter 73: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Flame	731
Chapter 74: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Light	741
Chapter 75: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Sound	751
Chapter 76: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Color	761
Chapter 77: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Taste	771
Chapter 78: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Smell	781
Chapter 79: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Feeling	791
Chapter 80: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Thought	801
Chapter 81: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Word	811
Chapter 82: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Deed	821
Chapter 83: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Act	831
Chapter 84: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Movement	841
Chapter 85: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Position	851
Chapter 86: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Place	861
Chapter 87: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Time	871
Chapter 88: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Moment	881
Chapter 89: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Instant	891
Chapter 90: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Fraction	901
Chapter 91: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Part	911
Chapter 92: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Piece	921
Chapter 93: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Bit	931
Chapter 94: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Drop	941
Chapter 95: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Grain	951
Chapter 96: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Seed	961
Chapter 97: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Spark	971
Chapter 98: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Flame	981
Chapter 99: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Light	991
Chapter 100: The Islamic Perspective on the Last Sound	1001



and Yimus for

اداره

mpex

tors | Exporters

Enclave-I

i-110 025 (India)

33 & 085888 33 7

| www.idara.com

T-E-DINIYAT (P) LTD

's Hotel, Hazrat Nizamuddin

44786 www.idara.com

تعليم الحق
TA'LEEMUL HAQ

A sincere request is made to all those who benefit from this Kitaab to include in their Du'aas the publisher and all those who assisted in making this publication possible, especially my late wife who had also played a vital role in the establishment and expansion of Dawatul Haq Group of Madressas. May Allah Ta'ala be pleased with her, reward her in abundance and grant her Jannatul Firdous. Aameen.

Jazaakumullah.
Shabbir Ahmed E. Desai (Soofi)

Table of Contents

Publisher's Note	x
Compiler's Note	xi
Forewords by	
Hazrat Maulana Mohammad Zakariyya Kandhlawi	xii
Hazrat Maulana Mohammad Masihullah Khan	xiv
Hazrat Mufti Mahmud Saheb	xvi
Hazrat Mufti Wali Hassan Saheb	xviii
Maulana Younus E. Patel	xx
Maulana Osman K. Kadwa	xxi
Acknowledgement	xxii

Teachings of Islam

Kalima of Islam	3
Imaan	7
Allah	9
Angels	10
Books of Allah	12
Messengers of Allah	14
The Sahaabah (Companions of Rasulullah)	16
Fate (Taqdeer)	17
The Last Day (Qiyamat)	18
The Life after Death	19

Salaah

Najaasat (Impurity)	26
Istinja	29
Wudhu and Ghusl	35
Steps of Wudhu	37
Fardh in Wudhu	41
Sunnats & Mustahab in Wudhu	42
Makroohat and Nawaqis in Wudhu	43

Ghusl (Bath)	52
Tayammum and Masah on the Khuffain	60
Azaan	74
Steps of Salaah (according to Hanafi school)	84
Rules and Conditions of Salaah	102
Faraaidh in Namaaz	107
Wajibaat in Namaaz	108
Sunnats in Namaaz	110
Breakers of Namaaz	115
Jumuah Salaah	126
Salaat of the Eidain	129
Namaaz of a Sick Person	131
Janazah - Death and Burial	140
The Janaazah Namaaz	155
Period of Iddat	165

Saum (Fasting)

Types of Fast	170
Things that break one's Fast	173
People Exempted from Fasting in Ramadhaan	175
I'tikaaf	177
Taraweeh	179

Zakaat

The Virtues of Zakaat	184
On whom Zakaat is Farz	186
Types of Wealth on which Zakaat is Farz	188
Nisaab and rate of Zakaat	189
To whom Zakaat can be given (Masaarif)	192
Qurbani Masaa'il	196
Aqueeqa	206
Sadaqatul Fitr	218
Rate (amount) of Sadaqatul Fitr	220
The recipients of Sadaqatul Fitr	221

The Vi
Upon
Hajj G
Umra
Detail
Ziyaa

Hala

1.
2.
3.
4.

Hajj & Umrah

The Virtues and Importance of Hajj	222
Upon whom is Hajj Farz (Conditions)	224
Hajj Guide Infographic	225
Umrah	229
Detailed Lesson on Umrah	230
Ziyaarat-e-Madinah	231
Halaal & Haraam, Intoxicants & Drugs,	245
Ribaa (Usury & Interest), Meeras (Inheritance),	262
Nikah (Marriage), Waleema, Talaq (Divorce) etc.	

◇ Summarised Table of Contents ◇

1. Teachings of Islaam	2
2. Istinja	26
3. Wudhu	34
4. Ghusl	50
5. Tayammum and Masah on the Khuffain	60
6. Azaan	74
7. Salaah method according to Sunnah (Hanafi)	84
8. Salaah conditions and rules according to Sunnah (Hanafi)	102
9. Jum'ah, Eidain and Namaaz of a Sick person	126
10. Janaazah - Death & Burial of a Muslim	140
11. Saum (Fasting)	170
12. Zakaat	184
13. Qurbaanee, Aqueeqah & Sadaqatul Fitr	206
14. Hajj and Umrah	222
15. Ziyaarat-e-Madinah	244
16. Halaal & Haraam, Intoxicants & Drugs,	262
Ribaa (Usury & Interest), Meeras (Inheritance),	
Nikah (Marriage), Waleema, Talaq (Divorce) etc.	

PUBLISHER'S NOTE

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

نحمده ونصل على رسوله الكريم

All Praise is due to Allah, the Exalted, Lord of the universe. Blessings and peace be upon the last of the Prophets, Muhammad ﷺ, his family, companions and those who follow his footsteps till the end of time.

"Idara" is honoured to present this revised and improved edition of the widely accepted book, "Ta'leemul Haq". This is a new, coloured composition of the book with chapters relating to each of the five fundamentals of Islam (Testimony of Faith, Salaat, Saum, Zakaat and Hajj) printed in different colours for easier access to the reader. The presentation of the content has also been improved by providing appropriate tables, illustrations, infographics etc. wherever required. Important texts such as the Ayaats of the Holy Qur'an, their transliterations, headings, illustrations etc. have also been printed in vibrant colours for easier apprehension. We have also included the transliteration of almost all Arabic texts for readers who are not familiar with the language as well as Urdu texts wherever possible.

Alhamdulillah, every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this edition. Nevertheless, it will be greatly appreciated if any errors in this edition are brought to the notice of the publisher. May Allah accept this work and reward all those associated with its production. Ameen.

Mohammad Yunus
Idara Isha'at-e-Diniyat (P) Ltd.
New Delhi, India

COMPILER'S NOTE AND IMPORTANT MESSAGE

(Regarding this revised and improved eight edition of Ta'leemul Haq)

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

الْسَّلَامُ عَلَيْكُمْ وَرَحْمَةُ اللَّهِ وَبَرَكَاتُهُ

Alhamdulillah, by the grace of Allah Ta'ala this new edition of Ta'leemul Haq has been totally revised. In this edition transliteration of important Arabic text has been included simultaneously, thereby accommodating those unable to read Arabic text.

Also by the grace of Allah Ta'ala and important addition is that of the new Part 16 which explains briefly the rules of Marriage, the importance of consuming Halaal, inheritance, etc. the purpose of this Part is to highlight to the reader that, together with Aqaaid and Ibaadaat there are other three branches of Deen as well, The FIVE branches of Deen are thus:

- 1) Aqaaid (Beliefs);
- 2) Ibaadaat (acts of worship, eg. Salaat, Fasting, Haj, Zakaat, etc.);
- 3) Mu'aamlaat (Economic dealings, eg. buying, selling, various trades, etc.);
- 4) Mu'aasharat (Human interaction, social dealings, contacts when mixing with various people, how to be mindful of fulfilling the rights of Parents, Families, Neighbors etc.);
- 5) Akhlaaq (Good conduct, character, morals, ie. To cleans the heart and soul of all spiritual maladies and sicknesses eg. pride, jealousy, insincerity, love of material things, and how to cultivate the love and fear of Allah Ta'ala, sincerity, humility, generosity, etc.

Knowledge regarding all these branches should be acquired, Part 16 covers some important aspects of the other branches, but however, in order to benefit fully the reader should contact the Ulama in his area. One could also refer to authentic books, eg. Bahishti Zewar of Hazrat Maulana Ashraf Ali Thanwi (R.A) the English version.

فجزاكم الله خيراً والسلام عليكم

JAZAKUMULLAH

Shabbir Ahmed E. Desai (Soofi)

P.O. Box 158, Umzinto 4200
Natal, Republic of South Africa

11 Rabi-ul-Aakhir 1419
04 August 1998

Foreword

by

Hazrat Maulana Mohammad Zakariya Saheb Kaandhlawi (رحمہ اللہ)
Shaikhul Hadith : Madarsa Mazahir Uloom Saharanpur
Muhajir Madinah Munawwarah.



For the teaching of pupils at the Primary Madrasas this compilation of a few publications called "Ta'leemul Haq" was given to this humble servant (of Allah) by its publishers. I heard extracts from a few places and found it to be very useful in it's objective.

May Allah Ta'ala reward the effort of these people who have made an effort to present (Islamic) beliefs and rules in simple language for the children to understand and grant it full acceptance.

May Allah grant it's organisers His pleasure and love and give them as much ability as possible to follow the footsteps of Rasulallah (صلی اللہ علیہ وسلم).

May Allah Ta'ala grant the Muslims the concern for the education and correct upbringing of their children and save them from all mischief and problems and give each person on his due time a good death.

(Maulana) Abdul Hafeez, (Saheb)

on behalf of:

(Hazrat Shaikh) Mohammed Zakaria (Saheb)
Stanger, Natal, South Africa.

28 Shabaan, 1401 Hijri. 1 July, 1981

Hazrat Shaikh Mohammed Zakariya Saheb was born on
Thursday 11th of Ramadhaan 1315 Hijri (2/2/1898).

Passed away at Madina Munawwarah on Monday the 1st of
Shabaan 1402 corresponding to 24th May 1982 (Allah
Ta'ala fill his qabr with Noor). AMEEN !

مقدمہ

از:

حضرت مولانا الشاہ محمد زکریا صاحب کاندھلوی
شیخ الحدیث مظاہر علوم سہارنپور ثم مہاجر مدینہ منورہ

بسم اللہ الرحمن الرحیم

مختصر و مفصل علی سرمد اکرم دہلوی صاحب
دعوت کو کتاب کے بیوں کی تدریس کیلئے چند رسائل کا جبرہ تحریر کیا نام تعلیم الحق
منظور ہے اس سیاہ کار کو دیا۔ جسے چند مقامات سے سنا اپنے مقصد میں
بہت مفید پایا مضامین و مسائل کو اس سان انشاء زبان میں۔ بیوں کے
لئے نام فہم بنانے کیلئے جو جب وجہ ان حضرات نے کہ میں اس کتاب کو
رفعال انکو اسکی بہترین جزائے فیر عطا فرمایا۔ ان کو تبریک سے
سرشار فرمائے گا کہ ان کو اپنی رضا و محبت نصیب فرمائے اپنے بھول
جھل اور عبید سلیم کے اتباع کی زیادہ سے زیادہ توفیق عطا فرمائے
مسلمانوں کو اپنے بیوں کی تعلیم و تربیت کی طرہ ترمیم کی زیادہ سے زیادہ
توفیق عطا فرمائے کہ ہر فرد شریعت سے محفوظ فرمائے اپنے اپنے وقت پر
حسن خانہ کی دردت کے مالا مال فرمائے رب العزت

(حضرت شیخ) محمد زکریا صاحب

تعلیم عبد الحفیظ

۱۰ ستمبر ۱۴۱۱ھ ۲۸ شعبان ۱۴۱۱ھ

ساریہ افریقہ

Foreword

by

Masihu Ummat Hazrat Maulana Shah
Mohammed Masihullah Khan Saheb Sherwani (رحمہ اللہ)
Principal, Madrasa Arabia Miftahul Uloom, Jalalabad, INDIA

We Praise Allah the Great and Pray for
Allah's blessings to His Noble Messenger ﷺ.

In Umzinto this humble person had an opportunity of visiting the
press of Dawatul Haq Ta'leemul Haq and was very pleased to
note the clear printing and script.

I was also very pleased to note that the books are free from
pictures of animate objects.

May Allah Ta-ala Grant the best of rewards (to its Publishers.)

May Allah Ta-ala grant His constant favours to serve the Deen
with peace and ease.

Wassalaam.

(Hazrat Maulana)

Mohammed Masihullah (Saheb) (رحمہ اللہ)

Umzinto, Natal, South Africa.

25 Rabi Ul Awwal 1399 A.H

Friday 23 February 1979 A.D.

The Late Mohammed Masihullah Khan Saheb (R.A)
Passed away on Friday 17-6-1413 A.H. (13-11-1992)
In Jalalabad at the age of 83 years.

May Allah Ta'ala fill his Qabr with Noor.

مقدمہ

از

مسیح الامت حضرت مولانا شاہ محمد مسیح اللہ خاں صاحب شروانی

خليفة: بحکیم الامت مجدد الملت حضرت مولانا شاہ محمد اشرف علی صاحب تھانوی قدس اللہ سرہ

بسم اللہ الرحمن الرحیم
نحمدہ و نصلی علی رسولہ الابرار

الحق یہاں سننے اور لکھنے کا عزم ہے۔ دعوت الہی ملے گی دیکھو۔ اتفاقاً
یہاں کتابت و طباعت کی ضابطہ دیکھ کر دل کھل گیا۔ یہ کہ ذیادہ کی
تعداد میں کتابوں کو پاک کر حاضر فرمت ہوئی۔ جزائے اللہ العالی۔
اللہ تعالیٰ بابر کے شہزادہ سے اس کی ترغیب سے باسبوت
مدام نورانیہ و السلام
۱۳۹۶ھ
۱۳۹۷ھ
۱۳۹۸ھ
۱۳۹۹ھ
۱۴۰۰ھ
۱۴۰۱ھ
۱۴۰۲ھ
۱۴۰۳ھ
۱۴۰۴ھ
۱۴۰۵ھ
۱۴۰۶ھ
۱۴۰۷ھ
۱۴۰۸ھ
۱۴۰۹ھ
۱۴۱۰ھ
۱۴۱۱ھ
۱۴۱۲ھ
۱۴۱۳ھ
۱۴۱۴ھ
۱۴۱۵ھ
۱۴۱۶ھ
۱۴۱۷ھ
۱۴۱۸ھ
۱۴۱۹ھ
۱۴۲۰ھ
۱۴۲۱ھ
۱۴۲۲ھ
۱۴۲۳ھ
۱۴۲۴ھ
۱۴۲۵ھ
۱۴۲۶ھ
۱۴۲۷ھ
۱۴۲۸ھ
۱۴۲۹ھ
۱۴۳۰ھ
۱۴۳۱ھ
۱۴۳۲ھ
۱۴۳۳ھ
۱۴۳۴ھ
۱۴۳۵ھ
۱۴۳۶ھ
۱۴۳۷ھ
۱۴۳۸ھ
۱۴۳۹ھ
۱۴۴۰ھ
۱۴۴۱ھ
۱۴۴۲ھ
۱۴۴۳ھ
۱۴۴۴ھ
۱۴۴۵ھ
۱۴۴۶ھ
۱۴۴۷ھ
۱۴۴۸ھ
۱۴۴۹ھ
۱۴۵۰ھ
۱۴۵۱ھ
۱۴۵۲ھ
۱۴۵۳ھ
۱۴۵۴ھ
۱۴۵۵ھ
۱۴۵۶ھ
۱۴۵۷ھ
۱۴۵۸ھ
۱۴۵۹ھ
۱۴۶۰ھ
۱۴۶۱ھ
۱۴۶۲ھ
۱۴۶۳ھ
۱۴۶۴ھ
۱۴۶۵ھ
۱۴۶۶ھ
۱۴۶۷ھ
۱۴۶۸ھ
۱۴۶۹ھ
۱۴۷۰ھ
۱۴۷۱ھ
۱۴۷۲ھ
۱۴۷۳ھ
۱۴۷۴ھ
۱۴۷۵ھ
۱۴۷۶ھ
۱۴۷۷ھ
۱۴۷۸ھ
۱۴۷۹ھ
۱۴۸۰ھ
۱۴۸۱ھ
۱۴۸۲ھ
۱۴۸۳ھ
۱۴۸۴ھ
۱۴۸۵ھ
۱۴۸۶ھ
۱۴۸۷ھ
۱۴۸۸ھ
۱۴۸۹ھ
۱۴۹۰ھ
۱۴۹۱ھ
۱۴۹۲ھ
۱۴۹۳ھ
۱۴۹۴ھ
۱۴۹۵ھ
۱۴۹۶ھ
۱۴۹۷ھ
۱۴۹۸ھ
۱۴۹۹ھ
۱۵۰۰ھ

Foreword

by
Hazrat Mufti Mahmud Saheb
(Grand Mufti of Darul Uloom Deoband, India)

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

Glory be to Allah and Salutations on the Holy Prophet Mohammed, (ﷺ) Masha-Allah this publication called 'Ta'leemul Haq' has been written on a very good pattern. In it, the basic beliefs, practices, character and devotional aspects (of a Muslim's life) have been explained.

If children read, understand and practice accordingly then Insha-Allah their lives can be moulded according to the Sunnah and they will be safe from Ignorance and being led astray.

May Allah reward the writer and accept his service and grant as many people as possible the ability to have benefit from the publication. Aameen!

(Mufti) Mahmood (Saheb)
(Grand Mufti of Darul Uloom, Deoband.)
Stanger Natal. South Africa.
18 Ramadaan 1401. 20 July 1981.

مقدمہ

از

حضرت مولانا مفتی محمود حسن صاحب
مفتی دارالعلوم دیوبند انڈیا

بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ الرَّحْمٰنِ الرَّحِیْمِ

بسمہ سبحانہ تعالیٰ

حاجہ دارالعلوم، زیر نظر ساریہ قدیمہ مفتی، ماشاء اللہ سبب اپنی تربیت سے
لکھا گیا ہے جس میں بنیادیں مضامین اعمان اخلاق، عبادت، کربان کی ایک سیر ہے
اسکو بڑھ کر سمجھ کر عمل کر سکیں تو اس شاندار کتاب کی زندگی نہایت ہی مطابقتی
ہوئے گی اور جیسا کہ خلافت سے محفوظ رہیں گے۔ حق تعالیٰ ان کو عفو و
حزائے خیر سے اور ان کی خدمت کو قبول فرمائے بیش از بیش بخوانی کو
نفعی اہل خانہ کا توفیق ہے۔ آمین
احقر حقیر
۱۰/۹/۱۴

Foreword

by

Hazrat Mufti Wali Hassan Saheb

(Mufti and Shaikhul Hadith of Jamiatul Uloom of Islamia
Allama Binnori Town, Karachi 5, Pakistan)



To equip the youth of the Muslim Ummat with religious education and training is an important duty and whoever will take an active part in this field will be entitled to ample reward by Almighty Allah, Insha-Allah.

The writer was pleased to note that Shabbir Ahmed Desai Soofi has commenced a very beneficial publication in Urdu and English called 'Ta'leemul Haq' to educate the Muslim children in their beliefs and practices.

The rulings on Wuzu, Namaaz, Fasting etc., have been explained in simple language and have been derived from Behishti Zewar and Ta'leemul Islam.

I persued through the early chapters of the publication and found the rulings correct in accordance with Islamic Fiqh (Theology). The printing is Nice. There is a great need for such publication in countries like South Africa. Due to the sincerity of the author the publication is ready. May Allah reward him and grant the youth of the Nation the ability to have benefit from it.

(Mufti) Wali Hasan (Saheb)

Mufti and Shaikhul Hadif of Jamiatul Uloom al Islamia
Allama Binnori Town Karachi 5, Pakistan

Stanger Natal. South Africa.

22 Ramadaan 1401. 24 July 1981.

مقدمہ

از

حضرت مفتی ولی حسن صاحب

شیخ الحدیث جامعۃ العلوم الاسلامیہ، علامہ بنوری ٹاؤن کراچی، پاکستان

بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ الرَّحْمٰنِ الرَّحِیْمِ

اُمّتِ مد کے ترہنہاوں کو دینی تعلیم و تربیت سے آریستہ نریا بہت ہی
 اہم و زلیف ہے، اور سلسلہ بن جو حکم الہی بڑھ جویا، اہم کو یہ دیکھ بہت
 اہم و زلیف ہے، اور سلسلہ بن جو حکم الہی بڑھ جویا، اہم کو یہ دیکھ بہت
 خوشی ہوئی اور عوفی سلسلہ بن جو حکم الہی بڑھ جویا، اہم کو یہ دیکھ بہت
 کو دین عفاۃ و عبادت کی تعلیم دینے کے لئے اردو اکر نریا میں "تعلیم حق"
 نام سے ایک مفید سلسلہ شروع کیا ہے جس میں عفاۃ، دین،
 نماز، روزہ، دبرہ و سائل آسان اور عام فہم زبان میں بتلاتے ہیں
 تعلیم اسلام اور بہشتی زندگی سے یہ مفید سلسلہ ماخوذ ہے۔
 میں نے اس کے ابتدائی حصوں کو جس قدر مشغلات سے دیکھا، الحمد للہ
 سائل صحیح اور حقہ ایسا ہے کہ اس کا مطالعت ہی حازب نظر ہے
 جنہوں نے ایسا ہی سلسلہ بن جو حکم الہی بڑھ جویا، اہم کو یہ دیکھ بہت
 سولف و عوف کی ہمت و اخلاص نے اکر کر دیا اور انہی کا مصوف کو
 اکر جریل سے نواز سے اور ترہنہاوں قوم کو اکر سے فائدہ پہنچانے کی خوشی
 اکر نریا سے

ب

دکتر آصف رشید الحدیث پاکستان
 حاشہ ائمہ اربعہ سلسلہ بن جو حکم الہی بڑھ جویا، اہم کو یہ دیکھ بہت
 حالہ بن جو حکم الہی بڑھ جویا، اہم کو یہ دیکھ بہت
 ۲۲ رمضان ۱۴۱۲ھ

Foreword

by

Maulana Yunus E. Patel

Secretary of Jamiatul Ulama-Natal, Republic of South Africa



Sezela is peaceful little village on the South Coast of Natal. The magnificent sugar mill here had brought people of different faiths to this little village. It was the late Hajee Ebrahim E. Patel who drew up Hajee Shabbir Ahmed's attention to the lack of any Islamic Mission work in this area. In the year 1968 it was at Sezela that Hajee Shabbir Ahmed, son of the late Soofi Ebrahim Desai of Umzinto commenced an effort to impart basic Islamic knowledge to both the adults and the children of the area. This effort proved a great success and within a short time other villages and towns like Lawson Estate, Malagazi, Renishaw, Park Rynle, Ixopo, Umkomaas, etc., could also boast of having a little Madressa for their pupils.

As most of the Madressas were established at places where pupils had no background of elementary Islamic Education, a definite need was felt for the text book in simple English, which would serve as a guide to both the pupils and the staff.

In the first chapter, the Ta'leemul Haq endeavours to explain to the beginners in simple language, the essential beliefs of a Muslim. Thereafter the laws governing Taharat, Ghusal, Tayammum and Namaaz are explained in the subsequent chapters.

In its compilation extensive use has been made of Mufti Mohammed Kifayatullah's, Ta'leemul Islam and publications of the Watervaal Islamic Institute.

Hajee Shabbir Ahmed is to be congratulated for the compiling, printing and publishing of 'Ta'leemul Haq'.

May Allah crown his efforts with success.

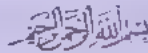
(Moulana) Yunus E. Patel
225 Sayani Centre, Durban Natal
1 March 1976

Foreword

by

Maulana Osman K. Kadwa

Principal Madrasa Islamiah, Umzinto, Natal
Republic of South Africa



In every age and era, whenever the character, knowledge and action began to decline and degenerate, Almighty Allah Ta'ala always inspired some individuals to make an effort for the upliftment of Ummat.

In contemporary times, when generally the Muslim masses show indifference towards the basic fundamentals of Islam and are disinclined towards religious practices, Almighty Allah guided Haji Shabbir Ahmed to publish the simplified, illustrated and easily understood "TA'LEEMUL HAQ", under the guidance of the Ulama.

Unlike other authors (publishers), he has not only undertaken the publishing of this book, but also teaches it.

By the grace of Allah Ta'ala this book has been accepted by students as well as by the Ulama.

Qari Ismail Desai (son of Hajee Shaabir Ahmed) has checked the references of the different Masaa'il, corrected and amended the previous edition and has typesetted the entire book.

Due to the simple language, illustrations, etc, Alhamdulillah many Madrasas here and abroad have included this Kitaab in their syllabus.

The blessings and Du'aas of the pious have played a vital role in the acceptance of this book.

May Allah Ta'ala accept these valuable efforts of the publisher and reward him immensely in both the worlds and make this great work a means of his salvation.

I hope and pray that the Ummah at large, will benefit from this valuable contribution. - Aameen !

(Moulana) Osman Kassim Kadwa.
Principal : Madressa Islamiah. Umzinto, Natal.

Acknowledgement

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

In the Name of Allah, The Most Merciful and Compassionate

All praise is due to Allah who gave this humble servant the guidance to publish this "Taleemul Haq". This publication is the result of the Du'aas of my late father, Hajee Ebrahim A. Desai Soofi well known as Soofi Mota and Muther, who spent the major part of their lives in the service of Allah's Deen. May Allah Ta'ala rest their souls in peace. Aameen.

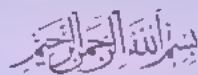
My task was made very much easier by the immense help I received from Moulana Younus E. Patel and Moulana Osman K Kadwa. Being bereft of any deep understanding of Islam, I had to impose on them considerably for clarification, verity and suggestions. Their insight into both the philosophical and practical aspects of Islamic life gives a measure of authenticity to this publication. May Allah Ta'ala reward them for the service they have rendered through this publication to both our adults and youth.

I am very thankful to the late Hajee Ebrahim Patel, Mufti Abdullah A.R.Mia, Maulana Haroon I. Abbasoomar, Maulana Qari Ismail S. A. Desai Soofi, Mr. Mohammed E. Karim and other who assisted me in this publication in any form.

I also acknowledge my great debt to the publishers of Maulana Mufti Mohammed Kifayatullah's (R.A.) 'Taleemul Islam', Maulana Ashraf Ali Thanwi's (R.A.) 'Behishti Zewar', Mufti Abdullah Ebrahim's 'Haj. Umrah and Ziyaarh', "Ziyaarah of Rasullah" prepared by the Mujlisul Ulama, P. E. , also acknowledge my great debt to the Waterval Islaamic Institute.

I am also greatly indebted to Hazrat Sheikh Maulana Mohammed Zakaria Khandelvi of Saharanpur, (Muhajir Madina), Mufti Mahmood Saheb of Darul Uloom Deoband, India and Mufti Wali Hassan Saheb of Jamiatul Uloom Al Islamia, Allama Binnori Town Karachi 5 Pakistan who despite their old ages and numerous occupations, utilised their precious times to page through and view this publication and express their kind and encouraging views in the prefaces. May Almighty Allah Ta'ala reward them abundantly and spare them longer and healthier lives. Ameen. Wassalam.

Shabbir Ahmed E. Desai (Soofi)
P. O. Box 158, Umzinto 4200 Natal,
Republic of South Africa,
3rd Ramadaan 1407 -2nd May 1987
Umzinto Masjid



HOW A READING LESSON SHOULD BE TAKEN

First give the children a minute or two to look at the Illustration and Dua's, then :

Step 1 Teach the new words on the Blackboard (3 to 4 minutes)

Step 2 Read through the whole lesson with the class, twice.

Step 3 This should be taken as a second period spent on the same lesson. The teacher should spend only a few minutes revising the new words and reading once through the lesson with the class.

Then all the children should read the lesson aloud, at the same time, but each child reading at his/her own speed with the teacher going round helping and encouraging.

PRACTICAL DEMONSTRATION IS VERY ESSENTIAL IN
EXPLAINING THE PROCEDURE OF PERFORMING WUDHU,
NAMAAZ, ETC.

GUIDELINES FOR THE TEACHER

The teaching of this subject should be as practical as possible. This kitaab has been written to enable the child to grasp the basic Du'as and to apply them to daily living.

The questions at the end of each part may be answered in written or oral forms. These questions will ensure that the child has read with understanding.

Practical tasks appear in some parts. The simple things to be constructed by the children will assist in making the subject a reality.

It is suggested that once a part has been completed and the questions have been answered, the teacher help the children to make their own brief notes to emphasise the important facts.

Apart from the practical work assigned at the end of a chapter, the following approaches are suggested as teacher and children proceed together through the kitaab.

1. Clothes should be checked regularly and advice should be given to those whose clothes are dirty.
2. It should be remembered that rules of Paak apply to the home as well as to the Madrasa. On his visits to the children's homes, the teacher will see how successful his teaching is. When he finds an unhygienic home, he should try to get cooperation of parents. This will make his teaching successful.
3. Cleanliness of the classroom : Children should take turns in sweeping and dusting the classroom. Windows should be cleaned regularly.
4. Personal cleanliness : Regular inspection of children should be conducted to see that they are clean. Head, face, hands, feet, fingernails and teeth should be inspected. Boys should be encouraged to keep their hair short.
5. Toilets : The need to keep the toilets clean is very important. They should be cleaned regularly and water must always be Paak.

تَعْلِيمُ الْحَقِّ
Ta'leemul Haq

تعليم الايمان
اسلامى عقائد
Teachings
of Islam

1

TEACHINGS OF ISLAM

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

In the name of Allah, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful.

نَحْمَدُهُ اللَّهَ الْعَلِيَّ الْعَظِيمَ وَنُصَلِّي عَلَى رَسُولِهِ الْكَرِيمِ
We praise Allah the Great and pray for Allah's blessings to
His noble Prophet.

اسلام کی بنیاد پانچ چیزوں پر ہے

ISLAM STANDS ON FIVE PILLARS

① کلمہ طیبہ یا کلمہ شہادت کے مطلب کو دل سے ماننا اور زبان سے اقرار کرنا۔

② نماز پڑھنا۔ ③ زکوٰۃ دینا۔

④ رمضان شریف کے روزے رکھنا۔ ⑤ حج کرنا۔

1. The name of our Religion is Islam.
2. Islam stands on five pillars.
3. These pillars are as follows :
 - a) **Kalima Tayyibah** : Every Muslim must Believe in and Declare the Kalima which means that there is none worthy of worship but Allah and Muhammad (ﷺ), is Allah's Messenger.
 - b) **Salaat** : Daily five times Namaaz
 - c) **Zakaat** : Compulsory charity on the wealthy.
 - d) **Saum** : Fasting in the month of Ramadhaan.
 - e) **Hajj** : To perform pilgrimage.
4. Islam is a religion of peace.
5. Islam is the perfect and true religion.
6. Islam teaches us all the good things about this world and the hereafter.

KALIMA OF ISLAM

1

اول کلمہ طیب

First KALIMA TAYYIB

لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ مُحَمَّدٌ رَّسُولُ اللَّهِ

Laa-ilaaha il-lallaahu Muhammadur-rasoolullaah

مُحَمَّدٌ رَّسُولُ اللَّهِ

محمد (ﷺ) اللہ کے رسول ہیں۔

Muhammad (ﷺ) is the Messenger of Allah.

لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ

اللہ کے سوا کوئی معبود نہیں

There is none worthy of worship but Allah

◆ This Kalima is also called : KALIMA TAUHEED

2

دوسرا کلمہ شہادت

Second KALIMA SHAHADAT (Testification)

أَشْهَدُ أَنْ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ وَأَشْهَدُ أَنَّ مُحَمَّدًا عَبْدُهُ وَرَسُولُهُ

Ash-hadu allaa-ilaaha il-lallaahu
wa ash-hadu anna muhammadan 'abdu-hoo wa rasooluh

وَأَشْهَدُ أَنَّ مُحَمَّدًا عَبْدُهُ وَرَسُولُهُ

اور میں گواہی دیتا ہوں کہ محمد (ﷺ) اس کے بندے اور اس کے رسول ہیں۔

and I testify that Muhammad (ﷺ) is Allah's Servant and Messenger.

أَشْهَدُ أَنْ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ

میں گواہی دیتا ہوں کہ اللہ کے سوا کوئی معبود نہیں

I testify that there is none worthy of worship but Allah

تیسرا کلمہ تمجید

Thlrd KALIMA TAMJEED
(Glorification of Allah)

سُبْحَانَ اللَّهِ وَالْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ وَلَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ
وَلَا حَوْلَ وَلَا قُوَّةَ إِلَّا بِاللَّهِ الْعَلِيِّ الْعَظِيمِ

Sub-haa-nal-laah, wal hamdu-lil-laahl, wa laa ilaaha il-lallaahu, wal-laahu
akbar, wa-laa haw-la, wa laa quw-wa-ta il-laa bil-laahil 'aliy-yil 'azeem

<p>④ وَاللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ اور اللہ سب سے بڑا ہے and Allah is the greatest</p>	<p>③ وَلَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ اور اللہ کے سوا کوئی معبود نہیں There is none worthy of worship besides Allah</p>	<p>② وَالْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ اور اللہ ہی قابلِ تہنیت ہے All praise be to Allah</p>	<p>① سُبْحَانَ اللَّهِ پاک ہے اللہ Glory be to Allah</p>
<p>⑥ إِلَّا بِاللَّهِ الْعَلِيِّ الْعَظِيمِ اللہ ہی کی طرف سے ہے جو عالی شان اور عظمت والا ہے except from Allah. the Most High, the Great.</p>	<p>⑤ وَلَا حَوْلَ وَلَا قُوَّةَ اور گناہوں سے بچنے کی طاقت اور نیک کام کرنے کی قوت and there is no Power and Might</p>		

چوتھا کلمہ توحید

Fourth KALIMA TAUHEED
(Believing in the Unity of Allah)

لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ وَحْدَهُ لَا شَرِيكَ لَهُ لَهُ الْمُلْكُ وَلَهُ الْحَمْدُ
يُحْيِي وَيُمِيتُ بِيَدِهِ الْخَيْرُ وَهُوَ عَلَى كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيرٌ

Laa ilaaha il-lallaahu wah-da-hoo, laa sha-ree-ka ia-hoo, la-hul mulku, wa la-hul hamdu, yuh-yee wa yumee-tu bi-ya-dihil khairu, wa hu-wa 'a-laa kul-li shay-in qadeer.

① لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ

اللہ کے سوا کوئی معبود نہیں

There is none worthy of worship besides Allah

② وَحْدَهُ لَا شَرِيكَ لَهُ

وہ اکیلا ہے اس کا کوئی شریک نہیں

Who is alone (and) He has no partner

③ لَهُ الْمُلْكُ وَلَهُ الْحَمْدُ

اس کی بادشاہی ہے اور اس کے لیے تمام تعریف ہے

for Him is the Kingdom and for Him is all praise

④ يُحْيِي وَيُمِيتُ

وہ زندہ کرتا ہے اور مارتا ہے

He gives life and causes death

⑤ بِيَدِهِ الْخَيْرُ

بہتری اُسی کے ہاتھ میں ہے

in His hand is all good

⑥ وَهُوَ عَلَى كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيرٌ

اور وہ ہر چیز پر قادر ہے۔

and He has power over everything.

5

پانچواں کلمہ رد کفر

Fifth KALIMA RADDE-KUFR
(Disproving of Kufr)

اللَّهُمَّ إِنِّي أَعُوذُ بِكَ مِنْ أَنْ أَشْرِكَ بِكَ شَيْئاً وَأَنَا أَعْلَمُ بِهِ وَأَسْتَغْفِرُكَ لِمَا لَا أَعْلَمُ بِهِ تُبْتُ عَنْهُ وَتَبَرَّأْتُ مِنَ الْكُفْرِ وَالشِّرْكِ وَالْكَذِبِ وَالنَّعَاصِي كُلِّهَا أَسَلْتُ وَأَمَنْتُ وَأَقُولُ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ مُحَمَّدٌ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ

Allaa-humma innee a-'oozhu bi-ka, min an ush-rika bika shay-an-wa-wa ana a'lamu bi-hee, wa astaghfiru-ka limaa-laa a'lamu bi-hee, tub-tu 'an-hu, wa ta-bar-ra'-tu minal kufri, wash-shirki, wal-kizbi, wal ma-'aa-see kullihaa, aslam-tu wa aa-mantu, wa aqoolu laa ilaaha il-lal-laahu, muhammadur-rasoolullaah.

1
اللَّهُمَّ إِنِّي أَعُوذُ بِكَ
اللہ میں تیری پناہ مانگتا ہوں
O Allah! I seek
protection in You

2
مِنْ أَنْ أَشْرِكَ بِكَ شَيْئاً
اس بات سے کہ میں تجھ کو شریک بناؤں
from that I should join
any partner with You

3
وَأَنَا أَعْلَمُ بِهِ
اور مجھ میں کا علم ہو
knowingly

4
وَأَسْتَغْفِرُكَ
اور میں معافی مانگتا ہوں تجھ سے
I seek Your
forgiveness

5
لِمَا لَا أَعْلَمُ بِهِ
اس (گناہ) سے جس کا مجھے علم نہیں
from that which
I do not know

6
تُبْتُ عَنْهُ وَتَبَرَّأْتُ
میں نے اس سے توبہ کی اور بیزار ہوا
I repent from it
(ignorance)

7
مِنَ الْكُفْرِ وَالشِّرْكِ
کفر سے اور شرک سے
I free myself from disbelief
and joining partners with You

8
وَالْكَذِبِ وَالْبَغَايِ كُلِّهَا
اور جھوٹ سے اور (باقی) ہر قسم کی نافرمانیوں سے
and from falsehood
and from all sins

9
أَسْلَمْتُ وَأَمَنْتُ وَأَقُولُ
اللہ میں نے تیری ممانعت قبول کر لی اور
ایمان لے لیا اور صدقہ دل سے اقرار کرتا ہوں کہ
I submit to Your will
and I believe and I declare:

10
لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ
اللہ کے سوا کوئی معبود نہیں
There is none worthy of
worship besides Allah

11
مُحَمَّدٌ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ
محمد (ﷺ) اللہ کے رسول ہیں۔
and Muhammad (ﷺ)
is Allah's Messenger.



IMAAN

Question: What is Imaan?

Answer: Imaan (Belief) is to have faith in something and to proclaim it.

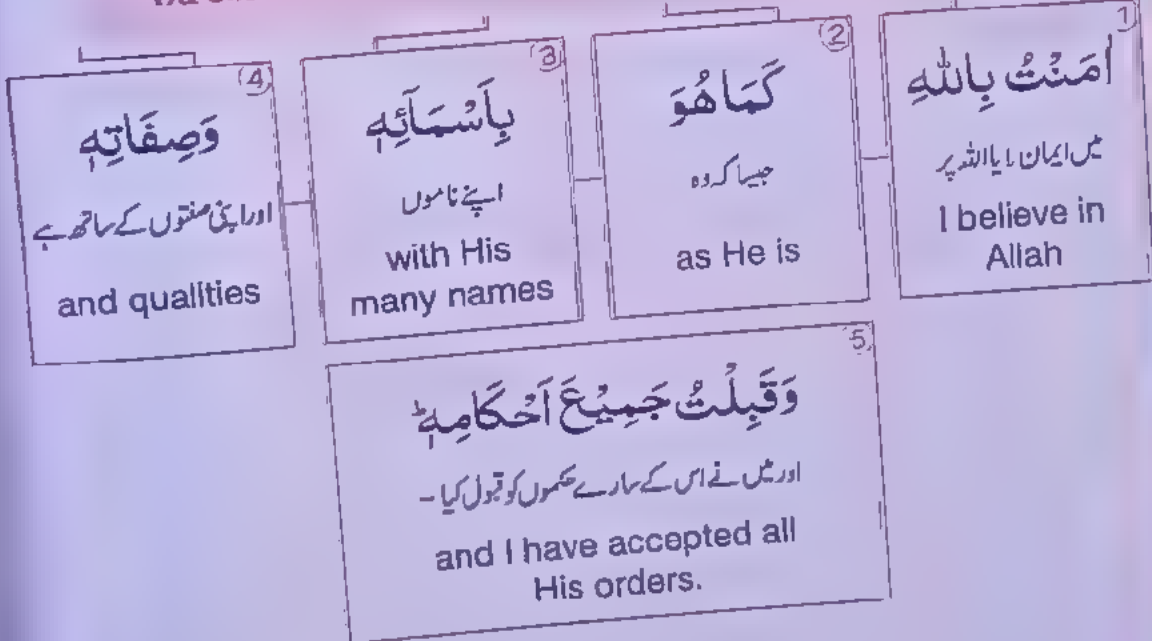
To a Muslim, Imaan (Belief) means firm belief in Allah and the teachings of our beloved Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ)

ایمان مجمل

IMAAN MUJMAL

اٰمَنْتُ بِاللّٰهِ كَمَا هُوَ بِاَسْمَائِهِ وَصِفَاتِهِ وَقَبِلْتُ
جَمِيعَ اَحْكَامِهِ

Aa-man-tu bil-laahi, ka-maa hu-wa bi-as-maa-ihee,
wa sifaa ti-hee, wa qa-bil-tu ja-mee-'a ah-kaa-mi-hee.



مسلمانوں کو سات چیزوں پر ایمان لانا ضروری ہے:
A Muslim has to proclaim Faith in 7 things, these are :

ایمانِ مفصل IMAAN MUFASSAL

أَمَنْتُ بِاللّٰهِ وَمَلَائِكَتِهِ وَكُتُبِهِ وَرُسُلِهِ وَالْيَوْمِ الْآخِرِ
وَالْقَدْرِ خَيْرِهِ وَشَرِّهِ مِنَ اللّٰهِ تَعَالٰی وَالْبَعْثِ بَعْدَ الْمَوْتِ ط

Aa-mantu billaahi, wa malaaika-tihee, wa kutubi-hee,
wa rusuli-hee, wal-yawmil aakhiri, wal-qadri khayri-hee
wa sharrihee mi-nallaahi ta-'aa-laa, wal ba'si ba'dal mawl.

wa sharrihee mi-nallaahii ta-
wa sharrihee mi-nallaahii ta-

④

وَالْيَوْمِ الْآخِرِ

اور قیامت کے دن پر

5. in the Day of Judgment

③

وَكُتُبِهِ وَرُسُلِهِ

اور اس کی کتابوں پر اور اس کے رسولوں پر

3. His Books and
4. His Messengers

②

وَمَلَائِكَتِهِ

اور اس کے فرشتوں پر

2. His Angels,

①

أَمَنْتُ بِاللّٰهِ

میں ایمان لایا اللہ پر

1. I believe in Allaah

⑥

وَالْبَعْثِ بَعْدَ الْمَوْتِ ط

اور مرنے کے بعد جی اٹھنے پر۔

7. and the life after death.

⑤

وَالْقَدْرِ خَيْرِهِ وَشَرِّهِ مِنَ اللّٰهِ تَعَالٰی

اور اچھی بڑی تقدیر پر کہ وہ اللہ تعالیٰ کی طرف سے ہے

6. and that fate, it's good
and bad is given by Allaah



ALLAH

1. Allah is ONE.
2. He alone is worthy of worship. And none besides Him is worthy of worship.
3. He has no PARTNER.
4. Nothing is hidden from Him, He even knows the thoughts that go into a person's mind.
5. He is the most POWERFUL.
6. He created the Earth, the Skies, the Sun, the Moon, the Stars, the Angels, Human beings and the whole Universe.
7. He gives life and death.
8. He gives sustenance to all creation.
9. He does not eat, drink or sleep.
10. He is forever and will be forever.
11. He was not created by anyone.
12. He does not have any parents, wife or children.
13. He does not depend on anybody. All depend on Him.
14. Nobody resembles Allah, and He resembles none.
15. He is pure from all faults.
16. He does not have eyes, nose or a body like that of human beings.
17. We should therefore PRAY to HIM for all our needs.

خدا تعالیٰ کے ساتھ مسلمانوں کے عقیدے

۱۔ خدا تعالیٰ ایک ہے۔

۲۔ خدا تعالیٰ ہی مہادت اور بندگی کے لائق ہے اور اس کے سوا کوئی بندگی کے لائق نہیں۔

۳۔ اس کا کوئی شریک نہیں۔

۴۔ وہ ہر بات کو جانتا ہے کوئی چیز اس سے پوشیدہ نہیں۔

- ۵۔ وہ بڑی طاقت اور قدرت والا ہے۔
- ۶۔ اُسی نے زمین، آسمان، چاند، سورج ستارے، فرشتے، آدمی، جن، غرض تمام جہان کو پیدا کیا ہے اور وہی تمام دنیا کا مالک ہے۔
- ۷۔ وہی مارتا ہے وہی جلاتا ہے۔ یعنی مخلوق کی زندگی اور موت اسی کے حکم سے ہوتی ہے۔
- ۸۔ وہی تمام مخلوق کو روزی دیتا ہے۔
- ۹۔ وہ نہ کھاتا ہے، نہ پیتا ہے، نہ سوتا ہے۔
- ۱۰۔ وہ خود بخود ہمیشہ سے ہے اور ہمیشہ رہے گا۔
- ۱۱۔ اُس کو کسی نے پیدا نہیں کیا۔
- ۱۲۔ نہ اُس کا باپ ہے نہ بیٹا، نہ بیٹی نہ بیوی نہ کسی سے اُس کا رشتہ ناتا۔ وہ ان تمام تعلقات سے پاک ہے۔
- ۱۳۔ سب اُس کے محتاج ہیں وہ کسی کا محتاج نہیں۔
- ۱۴۔ وہ بے مثل ہے کوئی چیز اس کے مشابہ یعنی اس جیسی نہیں۔
- ۱۵۔ وہ تمام عیبوں سے پاک ہے۔
- ۱۶۔ وہ مخلوق جیسے ہاتھ پاؤں، ناک کان اور شکل و صورت سے پاک ہے۔

ANGELS

1. Allah has created Angels out of light and gave them various duties to perform.
2. They are not visible to us.
3. They do not commit any sins nor do they disobey Allah.
4. They do what Allah has ordered.
5. We do not know their exact number.
6. We know of four famous Angels. They are :

◆ Hazrat JIBRAEEL (علیہ السلام)

◆ Hazrat MICHAAEEL (علیہ السلام)

◆ Hazrat IZRAAEEL (علیہ السلام)

◆ Hazrat ISRAAFEEL (علیہ السلام)

7. Hazrat JIBRAEEL (علیہ السلام) brought Allah's Book, Orders and Messages to all the Prophets. He was also sent to help the Prophets at times and fight against their enemies.
8. Hazrat MICHAAEEL (علیہ السلام) is in charge of food and rain. Other Angels work under him who are in charge of clouds, the seas, the rivers and the winds. He gets the order from Allah. He then order others under his command.
9. Hazrat IZRAAEEL (علیہ السلام) takes away life with the order of Allah. He is in charge of death. Numerous Angels work under him. Some take away the lives of good persons whilst others looking very fearful take away the lives of sinners and disbelievers.
10. Hazrat ISRAAFEEL (علیہ السلام) will blow the SOOR (TRUMPET) on the DAY OF JUDGEMENT. The sound will destroy and kill everything that is on earth and in the skies. When he blows for the second time all will come to life with the order of Allah.
11. There are two Angels that are always with every person. One writes all his GOOD DEEDS whilst the other enters all his BAD DEEDS, They are known as KIRAAMAAN-KAATIBEEN.
12. The MUNKAR and NAKEER question a person when he dies.
13. Some Angels are in charge of HEAVEN, some of HELL, some of looking after children, the old, the weak and others whom Allah wishes to protect.
14. From the QURAAN and HADITH we come to know that various other Angels are in charge of various other duties.

ملائکہ (فرشتے)

فرشتے خدا تعالیٰ کی ایک مخلوق ہیں، نور سے پیدا ہوئے ہیں، ہماری نظروں سے غائب ہیں، نہ مرد ہیں نہ عورت۔ خدا کی نافرمانی اور گناہ نہیں کرتے، جن کاموں پر خدا تعالیٰ نے انہیں مقرر فرما

دیا ہے انہیں میں لگے رہتے ہیں۔
فرشتوں کی گنتی خدا تعالیٰ کے سوا کوئی نہیں جانتا، ہاں اتنا ہمیں معلوم ہے کہ فرشتے بہت ہیں اور ان میں سے چار فرشتے مُقَرَّب اور مشہور ہیں۔

- ۱۔ حضرت جبریلؑ جو خدا تعالیٰ کی کتابیں اور احکام اور پیغام پیغمبروں کے پاس لاتے تھے۔
- ۲۔ حضرت میکائیلؑ جو بارش کا انتظام کرنے اور مخلوق کو روزی پہنچانے کے کام پر مقرر ہیں۔
- ۳۔ حضرت عزرائیلؑ ہیں جو مخلوق کی جان نکالنے پر مقرر ہیں۔
- ۴۔ حضرت اسرافیلؑ جو قیامت میں صور پھونکیں گے۔

BOOKS OF ALLAH

1. Allah has revealed His Books to various Prophets for the guidance of their nations.
2. The big Books are called KITAABS whilst the small ones are called SAHIFAS.
3. The four main Books that were revealed are the
 - ◆ TOURAAT.
 - ◆ ZABOOR
 - ◆ INJEEL
 - ◆ HOLY QURAAN
4. The **TOURAAT** (OLD TESTAMENT) was given to Hazrat MOOSA (عَلَيْهِ السَّلَام).
5. The **ZABOOR** (PSALMS) were given to Hazrat DAWOOD (عَلَيْهِ السَّلَام).
6. The **INJEEL** (NEW TESTAMENT) was given To Hazrat ESAA (عَلَيْهِ السَّلَام).
7. The **HOLY QURAAN**, the final Book of Allah was revealed to Hazrat MUHAMMAD MUSTAFA (صَلَّى اللّٰهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ).
8. Besides these there were many more smaller Kitaabs [Sahifas]

revealed, eg

10 Sahifas were revealed to Hazrat AADAM (عليه السلام).

50 Sahifas were revealed to Hazrat SHEES (عليه السلام)

30 Sahifas were revealed to Hazrat IDRIS (عليه السلام).

Between 10 and 30 Sahifas were revealed to Hazrat IBRAHIM (عليه السلام)

9. All the other Books besides the HOLY QURAAN were revealed at once.

10. The HOLY QURAAN was revealed over a period of 23 years.

11. All the other Books are no more in their original form. Changes, alterations and additions have been made to them.

12. The HOLY QURAAN has been memorised by thousands from the beginning of ISLAM right to the present day.

13. Allah has promised to safeguard the text of the HOLY QURAAN, which is miraculous.

14. The HOLY QURAAN was the final book of Allah. It is still pure, clear and free from any change or alteration.

خدا تعالیٰ کی کتابیں

خدا تعالیٰ کی چھوٹی بڑی بہت سی کتابیں پیغمبروں پر نازل ہوئیں مگر بڑی کتابوں کو کتاب اور چھوٹی کتابوں کو صحیفے کہتے ہیں۔

چارف کتابیں مشہور ہیں:

۱۔ توریت: جو حضرت موسیٰ پر نازل ہوئی۔

۲۔ زبور: جو حضرت داؤد پر نازل ہوئی۔

۳۔ انجیل: جو حضرت عیسیٰ پر نازل ہوئی۔

۴۔ قرآن مجید: جو ہمارے پیغمبر حضرت مسطفیٰ صلی اللہ علیہ وسلم پر نازل ہوا۔ ان کے علاوہ اور بھی چھوٹی چھوٹی کتابیں بہت نازل ہوئیں، مثلاً

دس صحیفے حضرت آدمؑ پر
 پچاس صحیفے حضرت شیثؑ پر
 تیس حضرت ادریسؑ پر
 دس یا تیس صحیفے حضرت ابراہیمؑ پر نازل ہوئے۔

MESSENGERS OF ALLAH

1. Allah sent many messengers to this world from time to time to guide mankind.
2. These messengers were known as RASOOLS and NABIs.
3. The FIRST of these messengers was :
Hazrat AADAM (عَلَيْهِ السَّلَام)
- Whilst the LAST was :
Hazrat MUHAMMAD MUSTAFA (صَلَّى اللّٰهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ)
4. We do not know the names of all the NABIs that came into the world.
5. There were about 124000 NabIs.
6. All the NABIs and RASOOLS were human beings whom Allah chose to convey His message to the people.
7. They always spoke the truth, committed no major sins and conveyed the message without adding or leaving out anything.
8. They performed miracles with the help of Allah Ta'ala.
9. All the RASOOLS were NABIs but not all NABIs were RASOOLS.
10. A RASOOL is a Prophet who received a new SHARIAT (Divine Law) and Book from Allah. A NABI follows the SHARIAT of a RASOOL or a Prophet before him.
11. No person can become a NABI or a RASOOL by his own effort.
12. No more Prophets will come after our NABI Hazrat MUHAMMAD MUSTAFA (صَلَّى اللّٰهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ). He was the final Prophet of Allah.

13. In the MUHA which
14. The r QUA IDRI
15. Our high
16. All

13. In the HOLY QURAAN Allah Ta'ala mentioned our NABI Hazrat MUHAMMAD MUSTAFA (ﷺ) as KHAATIMUN NABIYEEN which means that he is the LAST of all the NABIS.
14. The name of some other NABIS and RASOOLS mentioned in the QURAAN are Hazrat IBRAHIM, ISMAIL, YAHYA, ZAKARIA, YUNUS, IDRIS, YAQOOB and SULEMAN (Alay-Himus-Salaam).
15. Our NABI Hazrat MUHAMMAD MUSTAFA (ﷺ) was of the highest position amongst all the Prophets.
16. All the prophets of Allah preached the oneness of Allah Ta'ala.

خدا کے رسول (پیغمبر علیہم السلام)

رسول خدا تعالیٰ کے بندے اور انسان ہوتے ہیں خدا تعالیٰ انہیں اپنے بندوں تک احکام پہنچانے کے لئے مقرر فرماتا ہے وہ سچے ہوتے ہیں۔ کبھی جھوٹ نہیں بولتے، گناہ نہیں کرتے خدا تعالیٰ کے حکم سے معجزے دکھاتے ہیں۔ خدا تعالیٰ کے پیغام پورے پورے پہنچا دیتے ہیں ان میں کمی بیشی نہیں کرتے۔ نہ کسی پیغام کو چھپاتے ہیں۔

نبی کے بھی یہی معنی ہیں کہ وہ خدا تعالیٰ کے بندے اور انسان ہوتے ہیں۔ خدا تعالیٰ کے احکام بندوں تک پہنچاتے ہیں۔ سچے ہوتے ہیں۔ جھوٹ نہیں بولتے، گناہ نہیں کرتے۔ خدا تعالیٰ کے حکموں میں کمی زیادتی نہیں کرتے۔ کسی حکم کو نہیں چھپاتے۔

نبی اور رسول میں تھوڑا سا فرق ہے۔ وہ یہ کہ رسول تو اُس پیغمبر کو کہتے ہیں جس کو نئی شریعت اور کتاب دی گئی ہو اور نبی ہر پیغمبر کو کہتے ہیں چاہے اُسے نئی شریعت اور کتاب دی گئی ہو یا نہ دی گئی ہو۔ بلکہ وہ پہلی شریعت اور کتاب کا تابع ہو۔

جسے خدا تعالیٰ نبی بنائے وہی بتا ہے۔ مطلب یہ کہ نبی اور رسول بننے میں آدمی کی کوشش اور ارادے کو دخل نہیں خدا تعالیٰ کی طرف سے یہ مرتبہ عطا کیا جاتا ہے۔

دنیا میں بہت سے رسول اور نبی آئے۔ لیکن ان کی ٹھیک تعداد خدا تعالیٰ ہی جانتا ہے۔ ہمیں تمہیں

اسی طرح ایمان لانا چاہیے کہ خدا تعالیٰ نے جتنے رسول بھیجے ہم ان سب کو برحق اور رسول مانتے ہیں۔

سب سے پہلے پیغمبر حضرت آدم علیہ السلام

سب سے پچھلے پیغمبر حضرت محمد مصطفیٰ صلی اللہ علیہ وسلم ہیں

حضرت محمد صلی اللہ علیہ وسلم کے بعد کوئی پیغمبر نہیں آئے گے، کیونکہ پیغمبری اور نبوت حضرت محمد مصطفیٰ صلی اللہ علیہ وسلم پر ختم ہو گئی۔ آپ کے بعد قیامت تک کوئی نیا نبی نہیں آئے گا۔ آپ کے بعد جو شخص پیغمبری کا دعویٰ کرے وہ جھوٹا ہے۔

ہمارے پیغمبر حضرت محمد مصطفیٰ صلی اللہ علیہ وسلم تمام نبیوں اور رسولوں سے افضل اور بزرگ ہیں۔ خدا تعالیٰ کے تو آپ بھی بندے اور تابعدار ہیں۔ ہاں خدا تعالیٰ کے بعد آپ کا مرتبہ سب سے زیادہ بڑھا ہوا ہے۔

THE SAHAABAH (COMPANIONS) OF RASULULLAH ﷺ

People who either saw NABI (ﷺ) or stayed in his company, embraced ISLAM and died as MUSLIMS are known as SAHAABAH.

Singular : Sahabi Plural : Sahaabah

Any person who was in the companionship or saw NABI (ﷺ) for even a very little while is a Sahaabi provided he or she died a MUSLIM.

1. Rasulallah (ﷺ) mentioned : "All the Sahaabah are just and pious and whomsoever amongst them you shall follow you shall be guided."
2. The highest rank amongst the Sahaabah is that of Hazrat ABUBAKR (رضی اللہ عنہ). His position is superior to the entire Ummah (followers) of Rasulallah (ﷺ) till the day of QIYAAMAT. Next in rank is Hazrat OMAR bin KHATTAB (رضی اللہ عنہ). Thereafter is the

position of Hazrat OSMAN (رضي الله عنه) and then Hazrat ALI (رضي الله عنه).

Thereafter the position of the other Sahaabah is best known by ALLAH TA'ALA alone.

3. Amongst the Sahaabah is a group of TEN companions regarding whom NABI (صلى الله عليه وسلم) gave the glad tiding of JANNAT (Paradise). These are known as the ASHARA-E-MUBASHSHARAH (the ten who have been given the glad tidings of JANNAT) They are :

- (1) Hazrat Abu Bakr (رضي الله عنه)
- (2) Hazrat Omar (رضي الله عنه)
- (3) Hazrat Osman (رضي الله عنه)
- (4) Hazrat Ali (رضي الله عنه)
- (5) Hazrat Talha (رضي الله عنه)
- (6) Hazrat Zubair (رضي الله عنه)
- (7) Hazrat Abdur Rahman bin Auf (رضي الله عنه)
- (8) Hazrat Saad bin abi Waqqas (رضي الله عنه)
- (9) Hazrat Saeed bin Zaid (رضي الله عنه)
- (10) Hazrat Abu Ubaidah bin Jarrah. (رضي الله عنه)

It is from the Sahaabah the world learnt the DEEN of ISLAM. It is from them that we established the SHARIAT and obtained the SUNNAH of our NABI (صلى الله عليه وسلم).

A non-Sahabi is not equal in rank to the LOWEST Sahaabi, even though the non-Sahabi may be the greatest WALI (pious friend of Allah).

It is COMPULSORY to show respect to all the Sahaabah (رضي الله عنهم) and ABSTAIN from speaking ill and criticizing the noble Sahaabah of Rasullah (صلى الله عليه وسلم).

FATE (TAQDEER)

1. Allah has the knowledge of everything before its creation.
2. Allah has given human beings the willpower and the ability of doing good or bad.

3. Allah's knowledge of what good or bad one would do even before one is created is called TAQDEER or FATE.
4. All favours are by Allah's will alone and no misfortune can happen except by the will of Allah.
5. Therefore we should not despair over any misfortune or boast over any favour. This teaches us that we should be thankful to Allah for his favours and patient over any misfortune.

تقدیر کا بیان

ہر بات اور اچھی اور بُری چیز کے لئے خدا تعالیٰ کے علم میں ایک اندازہ مقرر ہے اور ہر چیز کے پیدا کرنے سے پہلے خدا تعالیٰ اسے جانتے ہے۔ خدا تعالیٰ کے اسی علم اور انداز کو تقدیر کہتے ہیں۔ کوئی اچھی یا بُری بات خدا تعالیٰ کے علم اور انداز سے باہر نہیں۔

THE LAST DAY (QIYAMAT)

1. This world will one day come to an end.
2. Besides Allah Ta'ala no one knows the exact day of Qiyamat. Only this much is known that on one Friday the 10th of Moharram Hazrat ISRAFEEL (عَلَيْهِ السَّلَام) will be ordered to blow the Soor (Bugle).
3. The sound will cause every living person or creature to die.
4. The earth will be shaken up. The mountains will become like flakes of cotton wool, the sun and the moon will crash. The stars will lose their shine and the whole universe will be destroyed.
5. The approach of Qiyamat will be known by its signs shown to us by our NABI HAZRAT MUHAMMAD MUSTAFA (صَلَّى اللہُ عَلَیْہِ وَاٰلِہٖ وَسَلَّم).
6. Some of these signs are as follows:
 - ☞ People will disobey their parents and disrespect them.
 - ☞ Breach of trust.
 - ☞ Singing, music and dancing will become common.
 - ☞ Illiterate people will become leaders.

- People will speak ill of their ancestors and the previous pious people.
- People of low means will begin to boast of high buildings.
- Unworthy people will be given high posts.

قیامت کا بیان

قیامت کا دن اس دن کو کہتے ہیں جس دن تمام آدمی اور جاندار مرجائیں گے اور تمام دنیا فنا ہو جائے گی۔ پہاڑ روکی کے گالوں کی طرح اڑتے پھریں گے، ستارے ٹوٹ کر گر پڑیں گے، غرض ہر چیز ٹوٹ پھوٹ کر فنا ہو جائے گی۔

حضرت اسرافیل علیہ السلام پھونکیں گے۔ اس کی آواز اس قدر ڈراؤنی اور سخت ہوگی کہ اس کے صدے سے سب مرجائیں گے اور ہر چیز ٹوٹ پھوٹ کر فنا ہو جائے گی۔

قیامت آنے والی ہے لیکن اس کا ٹھیک وقت خدا تعالیٰ کے سوا کوئی نہیں جانتا۔ اتنا معلوم ہے کہ جمعہ کا دن اور محرم کی دسویں تاریخ ہوگی اور ہمارے پیغمبر ﷺ نے قیامت کی کچھ نشانیاں بتادی ہیں۔ ان نشانیوں کو دیکھ کر قیامت کا قریب آجانا معلوم ہو سکتا ہے۔

حضور ﷺ نے فرمایا ہے کہ جب دنیا میں گناہ زیادہ ہونے لگیں اور لوگ اپنے ماں باپ کی نافرمانیاں اور ان پر سختیاں کرنے لگیں اور امانت میں خیانت ہونے لگے اور گانے بجانے، ناچ رنگ کی زیادتی ہو جائے اور پچھلے لوگ پہلے بزرگوں کو برا کہنے لگیں بے علم اور کم علم لوگ پیشوا بن جائیں، چرواہے وغیرہ کم درجے کے لوگ بڑی اونچی اونچی عمارتیں بنانے لگیں، ناقابل لوگوں کو بڑے بڑے عہدے ملنے لگیں تو سمجھو کہ قیامت قریب آگئی ہے۔

THE LIFE AFTER DEATH

- After the day of Qiyamat when everything will be destroyed, Hazrat ISRAFEEL (علیہ السلام) will be ordered to blow the bugle (Soor) for the second time.

2. Once again every person that lived on this earth from the time of Hazrat AADAM (عَلَيْهِ السَّلَام) upto the final day would be given new life.
3. They will all gather before Allah Ta'ala for judgement in the MAIDAAN-E-HASHR (Field of Resurrection).
4. They would have to give an account of their deeds.
5. The day on which this will be done is called :
YAUM-UL-HASHR (Day of Resurrection)
YAUM-UL-JAZA and **YAUM-UD-DEEN** (Day of Judgement)
YAUM-UL-HISAAB (Account) (Day of Reckoning)
6. The good would be blessed and rewarded with JANNAT or PARADISE.
7. The evil ones would be punished in JAHANNAM (Hell)
8. Besides the Kuffaar and Mushrikeen, Allah Ta'ala will forgive whomsoever He wishes.
9. **KUFFAAR**: Plural of KAAFIR meaning one who disbelieves in Allah.
10. **MUSHRIKEEN**: Plural of MUSHRIK meaning one who associates with Allah Ta'ala any partner in His being or attributes.

مرنے کے بعد زندہ ہونا

قیامت میں سب چیزیں فنا ہو جائیں گی۔ پھر اسرافیل دوبارہ صور پھونکیں گے تو سب چیزیں موجود ہو جائیں گی۔ آدمی بھی زندہ ہو جائے گا۔ میدانِ حشر میں خدا تعالیٰ کے سامنے پیشی ہوگی حساب لیا جائے گا۔ اور اچھے بُرے کاموں کا بدلہ دیا جائے گا۔ جس روز یہ کام ہوں گے اس دن کو **يَوْمُ الْحَشْرِ** (یعنی جمع کیے جانے کا دن) اور **يَوْمُ الْجَزَا** اور **يَوْمُ الدِّينِ** (یعنی بدلہ کا دن) اور **يَوْمُ الْحِسَابِ** (یعنی حساب کا دن) کہتے ہیں

1. What do
2. What is
3. Give an
4. What do
5. A Musli
6. Mufasss
7. What is
8. What a
9. Read
10. (a) Ka
11. (c) Im
12. Trans

10. Wh
11. Wh
12. Na
13. W
14. N
15. V
16. V
17. V
18. V
19. V
20. V
21. V
22. V
23. V
24. V

25. V
26. V
27. V

QUESTIONS

1. What does Islam teach?
2. What is the meaning of Kalima Shahadat?
3. Give another name for Kalima Tayyeba?
4. What does Iman (Belief) mean to a Muslim?
5. A Muslim has to proclaim faith in 7 things. These are mentioned in Iman-e-Mufasssal. What are these 7 things?
6. What is the meaning of Kalima Tauheed?
7. What are the five Pillars of Islam?
8. Read the following and explain their meanings,
(a) Kalima Tamjeed. (b) The 5th Kalima.
(c) Iman-e-Mujmal. (d) Iman-e-Mufasssal.
9. Translate the following into English.

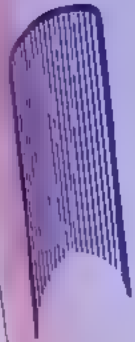
وہی تمام مخلوق کو روزی دیتا ہے۔
اس کو کسی نے پیدا نہیں کیا۔
وہ تمام عیبوں سے پاک ہے۔
وہ بے مثل ہے، کوئی چیز اس کے مشابہ یعنی اس جیسی نہیں۔

10. Who are the Kiraaman Kaatibeen and what do they do?
11. What are Sahifas and to which Nabis they were given? How many to each Nabi?
12. What is the meaning of KHATAMUN NABIYEEN?
13. Name some of the famous NABIs?
14. What did the PROPHETS of ALLAH preach about ALLAH?
15. What is TAQDEER or FATE called?
16. What are some of the SIGNS of QIYAMAT?
17. What is the meaning of Yaum-ul-Hashr and Yaum-ul-Hisaab?
18. Name the four famous ANGELS?
19. State the responsibility of the four famous ANGELS?
20. Name the four main BOOKS and to whom they were Revealed?
21. Over a period of how many years was the QUR'AN SHARIEF revealed?
22. Approximately how many NABIS were sent to the World?
23. When will QIYAMAT take place?
24. Who are the SAHAABAH and mention what NABI ﷺ has mentioned regarding them?
25. Mention the ranks of the Sahaabahs and name the Ashara-e-Mubassharah?
26. Explain the rank of WALI and the rank of a LOWEST SAHAABI?
27. It is _____ to show respect to all the SAHAABAH.

Note

Note

Note



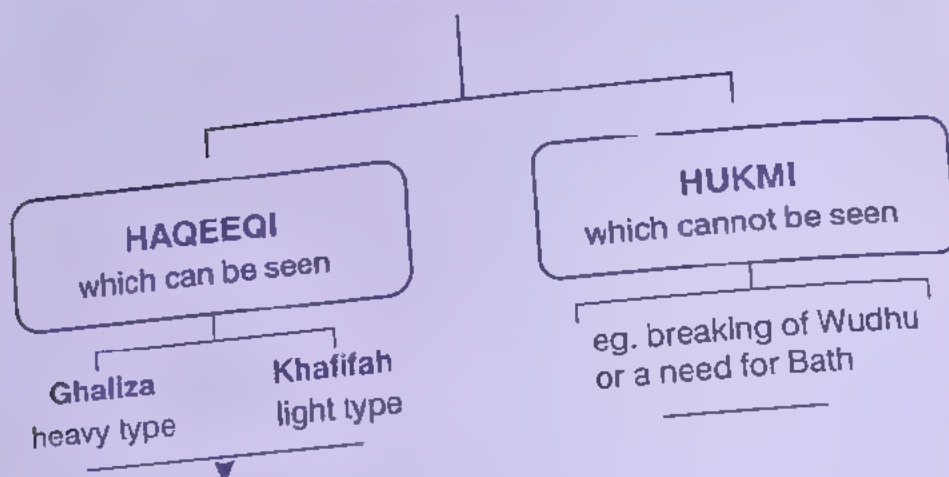
T

تَعْلِيمُ الْحَقِّ
Ta'leemul Haq

استنجدے کا بیان
Istinjaa

NAJAASAT (IMPURITY)

Is of Two Types



NAJAASATE HAQEEQI:

Uncleanliness or filth that can be seen e.g. urine, stool, blood and wine.

NAJAASATE GHALIZA:

Dense (heavy) types of Najaasat e.g. Urine and Stool of human beings.

NAJAASATE KHAFIGAH:

Lighter types of Najaasat e.g. Urine of Halaal animals.

MAKROOH:

Disliked or something which is against the conduct of Islam.

MAKROOH-E-TAHREEMEE: Near to Haraam.

HARAAM: Illegal or forbidden.

نجاستِ حقیقیہ کا بیان

نجاستِ حقیقیہ کی دو قسمیں ہیں ایک نجاستِ غلیظہ دوسری نجاستِ خفیفہ۔

جو ناپاکی سخت ہو اُسے نجاستِ غلیظہ کہتے ہیں اور جو نجاستِ ہلکی ہو اُسے نجاستِ خفیفہ کہتے ہیں۔

نجاستِ غلیظہ: آدمی کا پیشاب پائخانہ اور جانوروں کا پائخانہ اور حرام جانوروں کا پیشاب اور آدمی اور جانوروں کا بہتا ہوا خون اور شراب اور مرغی اور بطخ کی بیٹ نجاستِ غلیظہ ہے۔

نجاستِ خفیفہ: حلال جانوروں کا پیشاب اور حرام پرندوں کی بیٹ نجاستِ خفیفہ ہے۔

نجاستِ حقیقیہ چاہے غلیظہ ہو یا خفیفہ کپڑے پر ہو یا بدن پر پانی سے تین بار دھوینے سے پاک ہو جاتی ہے۔ کپڑے کو تینوں دفعہ نچوڑنا بھی ضروری ہے

NAJAASATE HAQEEQI

There are two types of NAJAASATE HAQEEQI.

- ① Najaasate Ghaliza
- ② Najaasate Khafifah

Examples Of Najaasate Ghaliza:

Urine and stool of human beings and the excretion of all animals and the urine of all Haraam (forbidden) animals, flowing blood of human beings and animals, wine, fowl and duck excretion.

Examples Of Najaasate Khafifah:

Urine of HALAAL ANIMALS (animals permitted for eating) and the excretion of HARAAM BIRDS.

Najaasate Haqeeqi:
Whether Najaasate Haqeeqi (Ghaliza or Khafifah) is on the body or cloth can be cleaned by washing three times. After every wash the garment must be squeezed.

	STOOL (Excreta)	URINE	BLOOD
HUMAN BEINGS	Najaasate Ghaliza	Najaasate Ghaliza	Najaasate Ghaliza
HARAAM ANIMALS	Najaasate Ghaliza	Najaasate Ghaliza	Najaasate Ghaliza
HALAAL ANIMALS	Najaasate Ghaliza	Najaasate Khafifah	Najaasate Ghaliza
HARAAM BIRDS	Najaasate Khafifah		Najaasate Ghaliza
HALAAL BIRDS	Paak		Najaasate Ghaliza

استنجہ کا بیان

استنجا کہتے ہیں، پائخانہ پیشاب کرنے کے بعد جو ناپاکی بدن پر لگی رہے اس کے پاک کرنے کو استنجا کہتے ہیں۔

پیشاب کے بعد استنجا کرنے کا طریقہ: پیشاب کرنے کے بعد مٹی کے پاک ڈھیلے سے پیشاب کو سکھانا چاہیے۔ اس کے بعد پانی سے دھو ڈالنا چاہیے۔

پائخانہ کے بعد استنجہ کا طریقہ: پائخانہ کے بعد مٹی کے تین یا پانچ ڈھیلوں سے پائخانہ کے مقام کو صاف کرے پھر پانی سے دھو ڈالے۔

اگر پائخانہ یا پیشاب اپنے مقام سے بڑھ کر ادھر ادھر نہ لگا ہو تو استنجا کرنا مستحب ہے اور اگر نجاست ادھر ادھر لگ گئی ہو مگر ایک درہم کے برابر یا اس سے کم لگی ہو تو استنجا کرنا سنت ہے اور اگر ایک درہم سے زیادہ لگی ہو تو استنجا کرنا فرض ہے۔

مٹی کے پاک ڈھیلوں سے یا پتھر سے استنجا کرنا چاہیے۔

ہڈی، لید، گوبر اور کھانے کی چیزوں، کونے اور کپڑے، اور کاغذ سے استنجا کرنا مکروہ ہے۔
بائیں ہاتھ سے استنجا کرنا چاہیے، دائیں ہاتھ سے استنجا کرنا مکروہ ہے۔

ISTINJA

ISTINJA means cleaning the private parts after passing out urine and stool by using clean water and clay, toilet paper etc,

1. It is SUNNAT to make ISTINJA after passing out urine, stool, etc.
2. It is permissible to use lumps of dry earth for ISTINJA, provided the body is properly cleaned.
3. For passing urine and stool, one should go to a place of privacy (toilet) and seat oneself at ease. After relieving, wash the private parts until satisfied that they have become clean.
4. It is MAKROOH to make ISTINJA with coal, bones, glass, baked bricks, printed paper, etc. It is not proper to use paper for ISTINJA which is also used for writing and printing. But with toilet paper it is different. It can be used for ISTINJA, since it was made only for that purpose and not for writing or printing.
5. It is MARKOOH to pass out urine while standing.
6. It is MAKROOH-E-TAHREEMEE to face or show the back to the KA'BA when passing out urine or stool.
7. It is FORBIDDEN to make little children seat facing or showing their backs towards the KA'BA when passing out urine or stool.
8. Remove rings, badges or anything else on which the name of ALLAH, His RASOOL (Sallallaahu-Alayhi-Wa-Sallam), Quranic verses or Hadith are written. It is permitted to have them in the pocket.
9. Use the LEFT HAND only in ISTINJA.
10. Do not urinate or pass stool on a public road or path, beneath a fruit tree, or a tree giving shade or in a well, dam or river.
11. If you are in an open place and there is no toilet, then sit in a place where you cannot be seen by others.

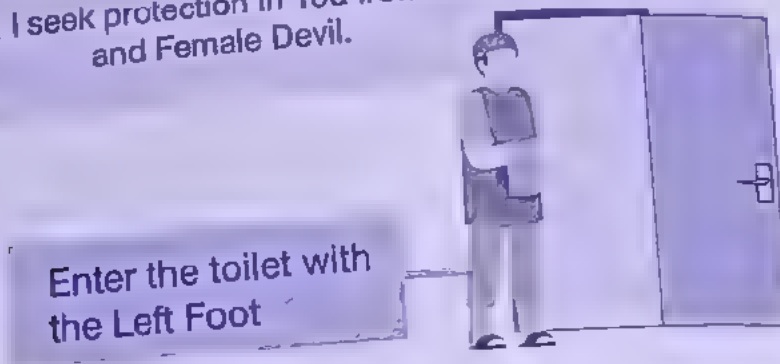
BEFORE ENTERING THE TOILET RECITE:

اَللّٰهُمَّ اِنِّیْ اَعُوْذُبِكَ مِنَ الْخُبْثِ وَالْخَبَائِثِ

Allahumma innee a'oozu bika minal-khubthi
wal-khabaa-ith

اے اللہ میں تیری پناہ چاہتا ہوں خبیث جنوں سے مردہوں یا عورت۔

O Allah! I seek protection In You from the Male
and Female Devil.



AFTER LEAVING THE TOILET

Step out with the Right Foot
and once outside recite:

غُفْرَانَكَ، اَلْحَمْدُ لِلّٰهِ الَّذِيْ اَذْهَبَ عَنِّيْ الْاَذٰى وَعَاقَانِيْ

Ghufraanaka, Alhamdulillahil-lazee az-haba
'annil-aza wa 'aafaanee

اے اللہ میں تجھ سے بخشش کا سوال کرتا ہوں۔ سب تعریفیں اللہ ہی کے لئے ہیں
جس نے مجھ سے ایذا دینے والی چیز دور کی اور مجھے چین دیا۔

O ALLAH! I seek Your pardon. All praises are due to
ALLAH Who has taken away from me discomfort
and granted me relief.

1. Name the
2. What is f
3. How sho
4. clothes?
5. What is
6. Give ex
7. Give ex
8. Explain
9. Explain
10. What i
11. How is
12. With v
13. What
14. Can
15. Wha
16. TOIL
17. Whi
18. dur
19. Tra

QUESTIONS

1. Name the two types of NAJAASAT?
2. What is HUKMI Najaasat?
3. How should one clean Najaasat GHALIZA that is on the body or clothes?
4. What is HAQEEQI Najaasat?
5. Give examples of Najaasat KHAFIFAH?
6. Give examples of NAJAASATE GHALIZA?
7. Explain MAKROOH ?
8. Explain MAKROOH-E-TAHREEMEE?
9. What is HARAAM'?
10. How is it to face the KA'BA when making ISTINJA?
11. With which foot one should enter the TOILET?
12. What is the meaning of ISTINJA?
13. Can one use printed paper for ISTINJA?
14. What is the meaning of the DU'A that is recited before entering the TOILET?
15. Which direction should one not face towards nor show one's back during urinating or passing stool?
16. Translate the following into English:

جو ناپاکی سخت ہو اسے نجاست غلیظہ کہتے ہیں اور جو نجاست ہلکی ہو اسے نجاست خفیفہ کہتے ہیں۔
 نجاست حقیقیہ چاہے غلیظہ ہو یا خفیفہ، کپڑے پر ہو یا بدن پر پانی سے تین بار دھو لینے سے پاک ہو جاتی ہے۔
 کپڑے کو تینوں دفعہ نچوڑنا بھی ضروری ہے۔

E TOILET

ght Foot
cite:

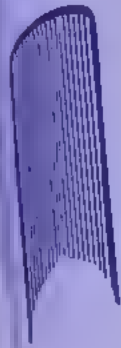
عُفْرَانِكَ، اَلْ

-haba

اے اللہ میں تجھ
جس

are due to
scomfort

Note



T

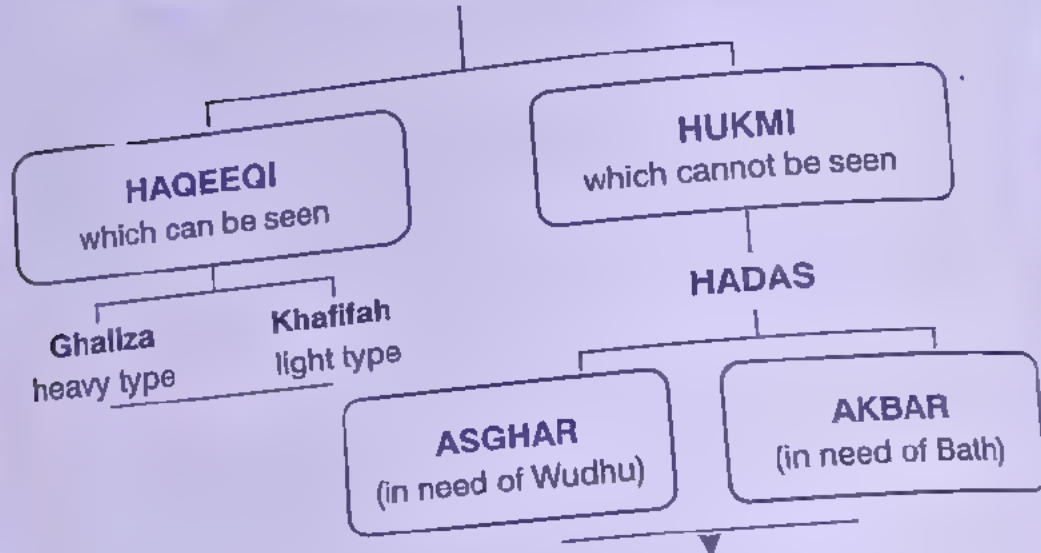
تَعْلِيمُ الْحَقِّ
Ta'leemul Haq

وضو کا بیان
Wudhoo'

3

NAJAASAT (IMPURITY)

is of two types



NAJAASATE HUKMI: When a person is in need of Wudhu or Bath.

HADAS: Breaking of Wudhu or Bath.

NAJIS (Napaak): Unclean or Impure

KHILAAL: The passing of wet figure between the beard, fingers and toes.

FARZ: Compulsory

SUNNAT: The practice of Hazrat Muhammad Mustafa (ﷺ)

MUSTAHAB: Preferable

MAKROOH: Disliked

NAWAQIS: Nullify (Break) Wudhu or Bath.

WUDHU

1. Rain water
2. Well water
3. Spring, s
4. Water of
5. Water of

♦ Water le
Halaal birds

WUDHU

1. All NA
2. Water
3. Water
4. Small
5. Urine
6. into i
7. Usec
8. Water
9. or a
10. Wa

♦ It

♦ F

WUDHU AND GHUSL

WUDHU AND GHUSL IS ALLOWED WITH THE FOLLOWING WATER:

1. Rain water.
2. Well water.
3. Spring, sea or river water.
4. Water of melting snow or hail.
5. Water of a big tank or pond.

◆ Water left over after drinking by human beings, Halaal animals and Halaal birds (e.g., cows, goats, pigeons) is TAAHIR (clean)

WUDHU AND GHUSL IS NOT ALLOWED WITH THE FOLLOWING WATER:

1. All NAJIS or impure water.
2. Water extracted from fruit and trees.
3. Water that has changed its color, taste and smell and becomes thick because something was soaked in it.
4. Small quantity of water in which something NAJIS has fallen, e.g., Urine, blood, stool or wine or some animal had died after falling into it.
5. Used water of Wudhu or Ghisl.
6. Water left over after drinking by HARAAM animals, e.g., dogs, pigs or animals of prey.
7. Water which a cat drinks immediately after eating a mouse is NAJIS.
8. Water left by a person who has just drunk wine is NAJIS.

THE NIYYAT (Intention)

- ◆ It is SUNNAT to make the NIYYAT for WUDHU.
- ◆ For Wudhu one should make the Niyyat at heart that he is performing Wudhu to get rid of HADAS-E-ASGAR.
- ◆ HADAS-E-ASGHAR: Means the need of Wudhu.



PRACTICAL DEMONSTRATION

IS VERY ESSENTIAL IN EXPLAINING
THE PROCEDURE OF MAKING

WUDHU-SALAAH etc.



◆ To wash one
SALAAH is called
without Wudhu

◆ One should
Face the direction

DU'

①
BC
TH

②

WUDHU وضو

◆ To wash one's hands, face and feet, etc. before performing SALAAH is called WUDHU or ABLUTION. No Salaah is accepted without Wudhu.

◆ One should sit on a high, and clean place to perform Wudhu. Face the direction towards the Holy KA'BA Sharif if possible.

وضو شروع کرنے کی دعا

DU'A BEFORE COMMENCING WUDHU (Ablution)

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ وَالْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ

Bis-mil-laa-hi wal ham-du-lil-laah.

میں اللہ کے نام سے شروع کرتا ہوں اور تمام تعریفیں اللہ کے لیے ہیں

I begin with the name of Allah And all praises are for Allah.

پہلے تین بار دونوں ہاتھ گٹوں تک دھوئیں

① Using TAHIR (clean) water FIRST wash BOTH the HANDS up to the WRISTS THREE times.

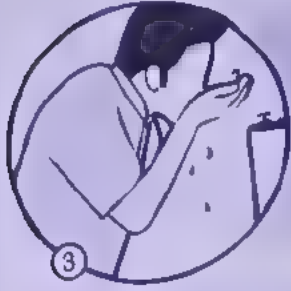


مسواک کرے۔ پھر تین بار نکلی کرے

② Use a MISWAAK for cleaning the teeth and then GARGLE the mouth THREE times.

وضو کرتے وقت مسواک کرنا سنت ہے۔ حدیث شریف میں اس کی بہت فضیلت اور تاکید آئی ہے، مسواک کر کے نماز پڑھنے سے نماز کا ثواب ۷۰/۷۱ مرتبہ زیادہ ہوتا ہے۔

◆ It is SUNNAT to make MISWAAK during WUDHU. By using a Miswaak the reward of a SALAAH increases 70 times.



پھر تین بار ناک میں پانی ڈال کر ناک صاف کرے۔
③ Thereafter take water up to the NOSTRILS THREE times with the RIGHT hand and clean the nose with the LEFT hand.

پیشانی کے بالوں سے تھوڑی کے نیچے تک اور ایک کان کی لو سے دوسرے کان کی لو تک منہ دھوئے پھر داڑھی کا خیال کرے۔
④ Then wash your FACE THREE, times. Wash from the hairy part of the forehead to below the chin and from one ear lobe to the other. Then make KHILAL of the BEARD.



پھر کہنیوں سمیت دونوں ہاتھ دھوئے۔
⑤ Thereafter wash the RIGHT HAND INCLUDING (THE ELBOW THREE times. Then wash the LEFT HAND INCLUDING the ELBOW.

پھر ہاتھ کی انگلیوں کا خیال کرے۔

⑥ Then make KHILAL of the FINGERS.



پھر سر، کان اور گردن کا مسح کرے

⑦ Thereafter wet the hands and pass them over the head, ears and neck. This must be done ONCE only. It is known as MASAHA.

وضو کرتے وقت کی دعا

DUA WHILST MAKING WUDHU

اَللّٰهُمَّ اغْفِرْ لِيْ ذَنْبِيْ وَوَسِّعْ لِيْ فِيْ دَارِيْ وَبَارِكْ لِيْ فِيْ رِزْقِيْ

Al-laa-hum-magh-fir lee zham-bee wa-was-si' lee
fee daa-ree wa baa-rik lee fee riz-qee.

یا اللہ میرے گناہوں کو معاف کر دے اور میرے گھر میں وسعت دے اور میرے رزق میں برکت عطا فرما۔

O Allah! forgive my sins and give expansion (abundance)
in my home and grant me blessings in my substance.

MASAH

WET THE HANDS AND FINGERS

- ◆ Keep THREE fingers of each hand together (middle finger, ring finger and little finger).
- ◆ Keep thumb and index finger raised (away).
- ◆ Keep thumb, index finger and palm away from the head.
- ◆ Pass the three fingers from the forehead to the upper portion of the nape.
- ◆ Then place the palm on the sides of the head and bring forward to forehead.
- ◆ Then insert the front portion of the Index finger into the openings of the ear.
- ◆ Then make Masah behind the ears with the inner part of the thumb.
- ◆ Make Masah of the nape with the back of the middle finger.



تین بار دونوں پاؤں منٹوں سمیت دھوئے

⑧ Then wash BOTH the FEET INCLUDING the ANKLES THREE times. First the Right and then the Left foot.



N.B. Use LEFT HAND for KHILAL of toes and washing of the feet.

- ◆ First wash the RIGHT FOOT including the ankle and then make KHILAL of the TOES.
- ◆ Beginning with the LITTLE toe of the RIGHT FOOT.
- ◆ Then wash the LEFT FOOT including the ankle and then make KHILAL of the TOES.
- ◆ Completing at the LITTLE toe of the LEFT FOOT



وضو کے بعد کی دعائیں

DU'A AFTER COMPLETING WUDHU

کلمہ شہادت

RECITE KALIMA SHAHADAT

أَشْهَدُ أَنْ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ وَأَشْهَدُ أَنَّ مُحَمَّدًا عَبْدُهُ وَرَسُولُهُ ط

Ash-hadu al-laa-ilaaha il-lal-laahu
wa ash-hadu an-na muham-madan 'abdu-hoo wa rasooluh

میں گواہی دیتا ہوں کہ اللہ کے سوا کوئی معبود نہیں اور میں گواہی دیتا ہوں کہ محمد (ﷺ) اس کے بندے اور اس کے رسول ہیں۔

(I testify that there is none worthy of worship but Allah and I testify that Muhammad (ﷺ) is Allah's servant and messenger.)



وضو کے بعد کی دعا

DUA AFTER MAKING WUDHU

اَللّٰهُمَّ اجْعَلْنِيْ مِنَ التَّوَّابِيْنَ وَاجْعَلْنِيْ مِنَ الْمُتَطَهِّرِيْنَ

Allaahumma-j-'alnee minat-tawwaabeen Waj'alnee minal-Muta-tah-hireen

یا اللہ تو مجھے توبہ کرنے والوں اور پاک صاف رہنے والوں میں سے بنادے۔

(O Allan, make me of the repenters and make me of the purified.)

◆ Also Recite Surah QADR:

بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ الرَّحْمٰنِ الرَّحِيْمِ

اِنَّا اَنْزَلْنٰهُ فِيْ لَيْلَةِ الْقَدْرِ ۚ وَمَا اَدْرَاكَ مَا لَيْلَةُ الْقَدْرِ ۚ لَيْلَةُ الْقَدْرِ قَدْرٌ مِّنْ اَلْفِ شَهْرٍ ۚ تَنْزِيلُ الْمَلٰٓئِكَةِ وَالرُّوْحُ فِيْهَا يٰۤاٰذُنْ ۚ لَوْ مِّنْ كُلِّ اٰفْرِ ۚ سَلٰمٌ هِيَ حَتّٰى مَطْلَعِ الْفَجْرِ ۚ

MORE ABOUT WUDHU

FARAAIDH OF WUDHU (Compulsory Acts)

NB: If a FARDH is left out the WUDHU is INCOMPLETE.
The items that are FARDH in WUDHU:

THERE ARE 4 FARZ IN WUDHU

وضو میں فرض چار ہیں

- ① Washing the FACE from the FOREHEAD to the LOWER portion of the CHIN and from one EAR LOBE to the other.

پیشانی کے بالوں سے ٹھوڑی کے نیچے تک اور ایک کان سے دوسرے کان تک منہ دھونا

- ② Washing of BOTH the ARMS INCLUDING the ELBOWS ONCE.

دونوں ہاتھوں کو کہنیوں سمیت دھونا

- ③ Doing MASAH of a QUARTER of the HEAD ONCE.

چوتھائی سر کا مسح کرنا

- ④ Washing of BOTH the FEET INCLUDING the ANKLES ONCE.

دونوں پاؤں شخنوں سمیت دھونا

◆ If any of the FARAA'ID are left out or a HAIR's BREADTH place is left DRY, the Wudhu will be INCOMPLETE

وضو میں تیرہ سنتیں ہیں

THERE ARE 13 SUNNATS IN WUDHU

◆ If a SUNNAT is left out, the WUDHU is COMPLETE but the full SAWAAB of Wudhu is not gained.

- ① Niyyat (Intention)
- ② Reciting of BISMILLAH.
- ③ Washing of the hands thrice up to the wrists.
- ④ Brushing the teeth by MISWAAK.
- ⑤ Gargling three times.
- ⑥ Passing water into the nostrils thrice.
- ⑦ KHILAL i.e. to pass wet fingers into the beard.
- ⑧ KHILAL of the fingers and toes.
- ⑨ Washing of each part THREE times.
- ⑩ MASAH of the whole head ONCE.
- ⑪ MASAH of both the ears ONCE.
- ⑫ Wudhu done SYSTEMATICALLY.
- ⑬ Washing of each part one after the other without pause, so no part dries up before the Wudhu is completed.

- ① نیت کرنا
- ② بسم اللہ پڑھنا
- ③ پہلے تین بار دونوں ہاتھ گٹوں تک دھونا
- ④ مسواک کرنا
- ⑤ تین بار کلی کرنا
- ⑥ تین بار ناک میں پانی ڈالنا
- ⑦ ڈاڑھی کا خلال کرنا
- ⑧ ہاتھ پاؤں کی انگلیوں میں خلال کرنا۔
- ⑨ ہر عضو کو تین بار دھونا
- ⑩ ایک بار تمام سر کا مسح کرنا۔ یعنی بھگیا ہوا ہاتھ پھیرنا
- ⑪ دونوں کانوں کا مسح کرنا
- ⑫ ترتیب سے وضو کرنا
- ⑬ پہلے درپے وضو کرنا کہ ایک عضو خشک نہ ہونے پائے کہ دوسرا دھو لے۔

THERE ARE 5 MUSTAHAB IN WUDHU

◆ Carrying out a MUSTAHAB act brings SAWAAB or reward but no sin if left out. The items MUSTAHAB in WUDHU are:

- ① To begin from the RIGHT.
- ② To make Masah of the neck.
- ③ Not to take ASSISTANCE from anyone.
- ④ To face the QIBLA
- ⑤ To sit on the high and clean place.

- ① دائیں طرف سے شروع کرنا! بعض علماء نے اسے سنتوں میں شمار کیا ہے اور یہی قوی ہے
- ② گردن کا مسح کرنا
- ③ وضو کے کام کو خود کرنا دوسرے سے مدد نہ لینا
- ④ قبلہ کی طرف منہ کر کے بیٹھنا
- ⑤ پاک اور اونچی جگہ پر بیٹھ کر وضو کرنا۔

وضو میں چار چیزیں مکروہ ہیں

THERE ARE 4 MAKROOHAT IN WUDHU

- ◆ Committing of a MAKROOH act in Wudhu causes the full BLESSING of Wudhu to be lost although the Wudhu will not have to be REPEATED. The items MAKROOH in WUDHU are:

- ① To make Wudhu in a DIRTY PLACE. ناپاک جگہ پر وضو کرنا
- ② To clean the nose with the RIGHT HAND سیدھے ہاتھ سے ناک صاف کرنا
- ③ To talk of WORLDLY AFFAIRS. وضو کرنے میں دنیا کی باتیں کرنا
- ④ To do WUDHU against the SUNNAT. سنت کے خلاف وضو کرنا

آٹھ چیزوں سے وضو ٹوٹ جاتا ہے انہیں نواقض وضو کہتے ہیں

THERE ARE 8 NAWAQIS IN WUDHU

- ◆ EIGHT things NULLIFY (break) the WUDHU. They are called NAWAQIS-E-WUDHU (breakers of wudhu) .

- ① Discharging of URINE, STOOL or the coming out of anything from the PRIVATE PARTS. پاخانہ پیشاب کرنا۔ یا ان دونوں راستوں سے کسی اور چیز کا نکلنا
- ② Discharging of GASES. ریح یعنی ہوا کا پیچھے سے نکلنا
- ③ MOUTHFUL VOMITING بدن کے کسی مقام سے خون یا پیپ کا نکل کر بہہ جانا
- ④ To fall ASLEEP lying down or by resting the body against something. منہ بھر کے تھ کرنا
- ⑤ To FAINT due to some illness or any other reason. لٹ کر یا سہارا لگا کر سو جانا
- ⑥ Becoming INSANE or going MAD. بیماری یا کسی وجہ سے بے ہوش ہو جانا
- ⑦ LAUGHING ALOUD whilst in SALAAH. بختوں یعنی دیوانہ ہو جانا
- ⑧ FLOWING of BLOOD or Pus from any part of the body. نماز میں تہجد مار کر ہنسنا۔

MASAA-IL PERTAINING TO WUDHU

1. If blood or pus does not move from the place of the wound or sore, Wudhu will not break. Wudhu will only break if the impurity flows out of the wound or sore.
2. If clots of blood come out of the nose while blowing it, Wudhu will not break. Wudhu will only break if the blood is in the fluid state.
3. If a pimple has to burst in the eye, then the Wudhu will only break if the fluid (that comes out of the pimple) flows out of the eye.
4. If the blood in the saliva is more than the saliva, Wudhu will break. Therefore if one's saliva is reddish because of blood, Wudhu will break.
5. Blood appearing on a toothpick will not break Wudhu, if the effect of the blood cannot be seen in the saliva.
6. Fluid from a paining ear will break the Wudhu, even if there is no sore or pimple in the ear.
7. Water which flows from the eyes because of the eyes paining, will break the Wudhu.
8. If males fall asleep in the position of Sajdah, but do not topple over, Wudhu is not broken. However, if females fall asleep in the position of Sajdah, Wudhu will break.
9. A doubt will not break Wudhu. One remembers that Wudhu was made, but cannot remember if the Wudhu was broken. In such a case of doubt, the Wudhu will be considered valid.
10. During Wudhu one doubts whether a certain part was washed or not. In this case that particular part should be washed. However, if such doubt occurs after the completion of Wudhu, then the Wudhu will be complete. No notice should be taken of the doubt.
11. After Wudhu if one remembers well that a certain part was not washed or Masah of the head was not made, then that part should be washed only or Masah should be made. There is no need to repeat the whole Wudhu.
12. It is not permissible to touch the Quran Sharif and tray, plate, etc. or which a verse of the Quran Sharif is written or engraved, without

Wudh

13. It is N
thoug
least
Wud
per
elth

14. If ti
so
ba
W

15. V

16.

Wudhu.

13. It is Mustahab (preferable) to make Wudhu for each Salaat even though one may be in the state of Wudhu. It is Mustahab only if at least two Rak'aats Salaat have been performed with the previous Wudhu. Thus if one did not perform any Salaat, it will not be permissible to perform fresh Wudhu before that Wudhu has been either broken or at least two Rak'aats Salaat have been performed.
14. If the four parts (that are Fardh to be washed in Wudhu) become soaked in the rain or have been washed by swimming or taking a bath, etc. then Wudhu will be valid even if one had no intention of Wudhu.
15. While making Wudhu one should take care not to strike the water against the face causing it to splash. To do so is Makrooh.
16. While making Wudhu the eyes should not be closed so tightly that the water is prevented from moistening the eyelashes or blocking the entry of water into the eye wells. To do so is Makrooh Tahrimi. If even one eyelash remains dry or water has not entered the eye wells, the Wudhu will be incomplete.
17. The mouth should not be closed tightly while making Wudhu. To do so is Makrooh Tahrimi. If any part of the lips remains dry, the Wudhu will be incomplete.
18. Wudhu will not be valid if any substance which does not allow water to seep through, sticks on any one of the four parts that are Farz. to be washed in Wudhu, e.g., gum, paint, cutex (fingernail paint), etc. If one realizes after Wudhu that some gum or cutex has covered the fingernail (for example), then the Wudhu will only be valid if the gum or cutex is removed and the fingernail washed. There is no need to renew the Wudhu.
19. If removal of the ointment from a sore or wound is harmful then it will not be necessary to remove it. If pouring water over the affected part is also harmful then merely make Masah of the affected part.
20. If the wound or sore is bandaged and one will experience difficulty in opening and tying the bandage for Masah purpose, or Masah on the affected part will be harmful, then Masah should be made over the bandage.
21. If this difficulty does not exist, then it will be necessary to open the bandage, plaster, etc., and make Masah on the affected part.

22. It is best to make Masah over the whole of the upper surface of the bandage, etc. It is Wajib to make Masah of more than half the bandage, etc. If only half or less than half the bandage was covered by Masah, the Wudhu will not be valid.
23. After making Masah if the bandage, plaster, etc., comes loose and it is realized that the affected part has healed, then the Masah made will not be valid. It will now be necessary to wash the particular part. It is not necessary to renew the Wudhu.
24. If the beard is thick then it is not Farz for the water to reach the skin under it during Wudhu. If the beard grows sparsely so that the skin under it can be seen, then it is Farz for the water to reach the skin as well.
25. Liquid that comes out of the eye while yawning, does not break Wudhu.
26. Fingernails should be kept short. Dirt accumulates under long fingernails. Wudhu and Ghusl will not be valid if the dirt is of such a nature that it does not allow water to seep through. It is also against Islamic hygiene and Taharat rules to keep long fingernails and to allow dirt to accumulate under them.

BAD ODOUR

The odour of cigarettes, cigars, raw onions, etc. is offensive to both the Musallies and the Malaa'ikah (Angels). If one has smoked then the mouth should be thoroughly washed before entering the Masjid.



QUESTIONS

1. Explain the term NAJAASAT and the difference between NAJAASATE HAQEEQI and NAJAASATE HUKMI.
2. Explain the terms NAJAASATE GHALIZAH and NAJAASATE KHAFIFAH and give examples for each.
3. Explain the terms :
 - ♦ Hadas
 - ♦ Hadase Asghar
 - ♦ Hadase Akbar.
4. Explain the terms NAJIS.
5. What is the difference between WUDHU and GHUSL?
6. Mention 6 types of water that can be used to perform Wudhu or Ghusl.
7. Name 5 types of water with which Wudhu or Ghusl is not permissible.
8. NIYAAT for Wudhu is: Farz, Sunnats or Mustahab?
9. Translate the Duaas read at the following times:
 - ♦ before begining Wudhu
 - ♦ whilst performing Wudhu
 - ♦ after completing Wudhu.
10. During Wudhu one should sit _____ and face the _____ if possible.
11. Mention the benefits of using the MISWAAK.
12. The using of Miswaak is: a) Mustahab, b) Sunnah, c) Farz.
13. Explain the term MASAH and the procedure of making Masah of the neck.
14. Explain the term KHILAL.
15. Both the feet should be washed with the _____ hand and the finger of the _____ hand should be used for the Khilal of the toes.
16. Khilal of the toes should begin at the _____ toe and at the _____ toe.
17. Explain:
 - ♦ Farz
 - ♦ Sunnah
 - ♦ Mustahab
 - ♦ Makrooh
 - ♦ Nawaqis.
18. Mention the Faraafz, Sunnats, Mustahab, Makroohs and Nawaqis of Wudhu.
19. Will the Wudhu break if blood or Pus does not flow from the wound?
20. What happens if a person doubts of having washed a certain part or not?
21. Mention three points regarding Masah over a bandage.
22. Is it necessary to make Wudhu after having taken a bath?
23. Does fluid that flows out of the eye while yawning, break the Wudhu?

Note

تَعْلِيمُ الْحَقِّ
Ta'leemul Haq

غسل کا بیان
Ghusl

4

پانی کا بیان MORE ABOUT WATER

1. The water with which Wudhu or Ghusl has been made is called MUSTA'MAL (used) WATER. This itself is TAAHIR, but Wudhu or Ghusl is not ALLOWED with this water.

۱۔ جس پانی سے وضو یا غسل کیا گیا ہو ایسے پانی کو مستعمل پانی کہتے ہیں جو خود پاک ہے مگر اس سے وضو یا غسل کرنا جائز نہیں۔
2. Water from which DOGS, PIGS or ANIMALS of PREY have drunk is NAJIS (Impure). The water which a CAT drinks immediately after eating a mouse or any other creature is NAJIS (Impure). Water left by a person who has just drunk WINE is also NAJIS (Impure).

۲۔ کتے، خنزیر اور شکاری چوپائے کا جھوٹا پانی ناپاک ہے اسی طرح بلی جو چوہا یا کوئی اور جانور کھا کر فوراً پانی پی لے اس کا جھوٹا بھی ناپاک ہے۔ جس آدمی نے شراب پی اور فوراً پانی پی لیا اس کا جھوٹا بھی ناپاک ہے۔
3. Water left by a cat (if it has not just eaten a mouse), a cow, buffalo or hen that eats anything Impure (filth), lizard, crow, kite, hawk, eagle and all other Haraam birds, is MAKROOH.

۳۔ بلی (بشرطیکہ فوراً چوہا نہ کھایا ہو) چوہا، چھپکلی، بھرنے والی مرغی، نجاست کھانے والی گائے، بھینس، کوا، جیل، شکرہ اور تمام حرام جانوروں کا جھوٹا مکروہ ہے۔
4. The water which has been left over after drinking by human beings, Halaal animals e.g. a cow, goats, pigeons, doves and horses, is TAAHIR (clean).

۴۔ آدمی اور حلال جانوروں کا جھوٹا پانی پاک ہے، جیسے گائے، بکری، کبوتر، فاختہ، گھوڑا۔
5. All types of water will become NAJIS if NAJAASAT falls into them. However, two types of water are excluded from this rule, namely: Flowing water of river or sea and STORED water in LARGE QUANTITY, e.g. large reservoir or huge tank.

۵۔ سوائے دو پانیوں کے تمام پانی نجاست کے گرنے سے ناپاک ہو جاتے ہیں۔ وہ دو پانی یہ ہیں۔ اول ندی یا دریا کا بہتا ہوا پانی، دوسرے ٹھہرا ہوا زیادہ پانی جیسے بڑے تالاب یا بڑے حوض کا پانی
6. Stored or standing water which covers an area of approximately

۶۔ جو ٹھہرا ہوا پانی نمبری گز سے ساڑھے پانچ گز لمبا اور

21 x 21 FEET, THAT IS = (6.5m. x 6.5m) and is deep enough so that a person can take out water with his hands without baring the ground, is regarded as large quantity of water. Any tank or reservoir as big as that will be called a BIG TANK or a BIG RESERVOIR.

ساڑھے پانچ گز چوڑا ہو وہ زیادہ پانی ہے۔ جو حوض یا تالاب کہلاتا ہے، وہ بڑا حوض یا تالاب سمجھا جائے گا۔

7. Any animal or bird which has FLOWING BLOOD and falls into water of a SMALL quantity and dies will make the water NAJIS (Impure). e.g. birds, fowls, pigeons, cats or mice, etc.

۷۔ اگر پانی میں کوئی ایسا جانور گر کر مر جائے جس میں بہتا ہوا خون ہوتا ہے تو پانی ناپاک ہو جاتا ہے۔ جیسے چڑیا، مرغی، کبوتر، بلی، چوہا۔

8. The water of a big tank or reservoir becomes NAJIS when the TASTE, COLOUR or SMELL of the NAJAASAT becomes apparent.

۸۔ بڑے تالاب یا حوض کا پانی ناپاک ہوتا ہے، جب اس میں نجاست کا مزہ یا رنگ یا بو ظاہر ہو جائے۔



9. Animals that are born and live in water, e.g. fish, frogs, etc. or insects that do NOT have FLOWING BLOOD, e.g. flies, lizards, frogs or ants do not make the water NAJIS if they have to die inside the water.

۹۔ جو جانور کہ پانی میں پیدا ہوتے اور رہتے ہیں جیسے مچھلی، میونڈک اور وہ جانور جن میں بہتا ہوا خون نہیں ہے، جیسے مکھی، تحیر، بھڑ، چھپکلی، چیونٹی، ان کے مرنے سے پانی ناپاک نہیں ہوتا۔



GHUSL (BATH)

غسل کے وقت نیت کرنا سنت ہے جس کا مطلب یہ ہے کہ جس حدث سے غسل کرنا چاہیے تو اس حدث کا نام لے کر دل میں ارادہ کرے کہ فلاں حدث سے پاک ہونے کے لیے میں غسل کرتا ہوں یا کرتی ہوں مثلاً یوں نیت کرے کہ:

◆ ”جنابت سے پاک ہونے کیلئے میں غسل کرتا ہوں یا میں غسل کرتی ہوں۔“

حدیث اکبر

غسل کی حاجت ہونے کی حالت کو کہتے ہیں ’جنابت‘۔
حیض اور نفاس سے پاک ہونے کے لیے غسل فرض ہوتا ہے۔

TAHARAT (CLEANLINESS) NIYYAT (INTENTION) OF GHUSL (BATH)

TO MAKE THE NIYYAT FOR GHUSL IS SUNNAT.

One should make the intention of becoming PURE (clean) from that HADAS (impurity) which he wishes to get himself clean from, e.g.:

◆ I AM MAKING GHUSL TO BECOME CLEAN (PAAK) FROM JANAABAT
HADASE AKBAR:
NEED OF COMPULSORY BATH.

FARAA-IDH OF GHUSL

(Compulsory Acts of GHUSL)

THERE ARE THREE
FARZ IN GHUSL



غسل میں تین مندرجہ ہیں

◆ If any of the FARAA'ID are left out or a HAIR'S-BREADTH place is left DRY the Ghusl will be INCOMPLETE.

① Passing water into and out of the mouth, i.e. GARGLING.

کلی کرنا



ناک میں پانی ڈالنا

② Putting water into the NOSTRILS.

تمام بدن پر پانی بہانا، کہ کسی بال کی جڑ بھی سوکھی نہ رہ جائے۔
 ③ Passing water over the entire body.



THERE ARE FIVE SUNNATS IN GHUSL

5

غسل میں پانچ سنتیں ہیں

دونوں ہاتھ گتوں تک دھونا

① Washing hands up to the wrists.



استنجا کرنا، اور جس جگہ بدن پر نجاست لگی ہو اسے دھونا

② Washing the private parts and the parts over which uncleanness is found:



ناپاکی دور کرنے کی نیت کرنا

③ Niyyat of washing off Hukmi Najaasat.

بدن دھونے سے پہلے وضو کر لینا

④ Making Wudhu before washing the body.



پھر تمام بدن پر تین بار پانی بہانا۔

⑤ Then passing water over the whole body thrice.



RULES WHILST MAKING GHUSL

1. Ghusl should be made in a place of total privacy.
2. One should not face the Qibla whilst making Ghusl.
3. Ghusl may be performed standing or seated, preferably seated.
4. Use sufficient water. Do not skimp nor be wasteful.
5. Abstain from speaking whilst performing Ghusl.

6. It is better not to read any Kalima or Ayah while bathing. Before performing Ghusl one should make
- ◆ Niyyat (intention) thus: "I am performing Ghusl to become PAAK(Pure)."
 - ◆ Without Niyyat there is no SAWAAB (reward) although Ghusl will be valid.

PROCEDURE FOR PERFORMING GHUSL

1. Wash both hands including the wrists.
2. Wash the private parts. The hands and private parts should be washed even if one is not in the state of JANAABAT or NAJAASAT.
3. If there is NAJAASAT elsewhere on the body, it should now be washed off.
4. Perform Wudhu. If one is making Ghusl on a stool or platform where water will rapidly flow away, then perform the complete Wudhu. If there is a fear of the feet being dipped in waste water during the Ghusl then postpone the washing of the feet to the end of the Ghusl. Ensure that the mouth and nostrils are thoroughly rinsed THRICE.
5. After performing Wudhu, pour water over the head thrice.
6. Thereafter pour water thrice over the right shoulder and thrice over the left shoulder.
7. Then pour water over the entire body and rub.
8. If the hair of the head is not plaited, it is compulsory to wet all the hair up to the very base.
 - ◆ If a single hair is left DRY, Ghusl will NOT be VALID.
 - ◆ If the hair of a woman is plaited, she is excused from loosening her plaited hair but it is COMPULSORY for her to wet the base of each and every hair. If she fails to do so then the Ghusl will NOT be VALID.
 - ◆ As for men who grow long hair and plait them, they are NOT EXCUSED from leaving their hair DRY.
 - ◆ If a woman experiences difficulty or is unable to wet the very bottom of her plaited hair, then it is necessary for her to unplait her hair and wash her entire hair.

9. It is MUSTAHAB (preferable) to clean the body by rubbing it.

All parts of the body should be rubbed with the hands to ensure that water has reached all parts of the body and no portion is left dry.

10. Rings, earrings, etc., should be removed to ensure that no portion covered by them is left dry. Ensure that the navel and ears are all wet. If they are not wet Ghusl will be incomplete.

11. On completion one should confine oneself to a clean place. If, while performing Wudhu the feet had been washed, it is not necessary to wash them again. Dry the body with a clean towel and dress as hastily as possible.

12. If after Ghusl one recalls that a certain portion of the body is left dry, it is not necessary to repeat the Ghusl. Merely wash the dry portion. It is not sufficient to pass a wet hand over the dry place. If one has forgotten to rinse the mouth or the nostrils, these too must be rinsed when recalled after Ghusl has been performed.

QUESTIONS

1. The water with which WUDHU or GHUSL has been made is called?
2. Is WUDHU or GHUSL allowed with MUSTA'MAL Water?
3. The LEFT OVER water drunk by which animals is NAPAAK?
4. The LEFT OVER water drunk by which animal is MAKRUH?
5. Water LEFT OVER by whom is TAHIR (clean)?
6. Name TWO types of water that does NOT become NAPAAK if something NAJIS (Napaak) falls into it?
7. When does a BIG TANK or RESERVOIR become NAJIS?
8. What does TAHAARAT mean?
9. What are the 3 FARAA'IZ of GHUSL?
10. What are the 5 SUNNATS of GHUSL?
11. What are the 6 Rules whilst making GHUSL?
12. Explain the PROCEDURE for making GHUSL?
13. Explain HADATH-E-AKBAR?

MASAA-IL-PERTAINING TO GHUSL

1. It is permissible to leave the head dry and wash the rest of the body if it is harmful to apply water to the head due to some sickness or ailment. However, once the person is cured of his sickness, it is Wajib to wash the head. Water has to flow over it.
2. Make haste in covering the body. One should not delay in wearing one's clothes after completing the Ghushl. The Shariat emphasizes this so much, that if the feet have not been washed as yet, then first put on the clothes and thereafter wash the feet.
3. It is not necessary to remove the ointment from a cut or wound during Ghushl. Just pour water over it.
4. After Ghushl, Wudhu should not be made to perform Salaat or for any other Ibaadat since the Ghushl is sufficient.

◆ It is preferable to cut the nails of the fingers and toes as well as remove the hair from under the armpits and below the navel before taking bath. If one is in the state of Hadase Akbar or Janaabat then it is not permissible to remove, cut or break any nails or hair from any part of the body. Unwanted hair should preferably be removed once a week. If this is not possible then every second week. Care should be taken that it is not left for more than 40 days. Beyond 40 days the neglecter will be guilty of sin.

Note: It is compulsory for a person who is in the state of Janaabat (impurity) to perform Ghushl. It is also compulsory for a woman to have a bath after Haidh and Nifaas.

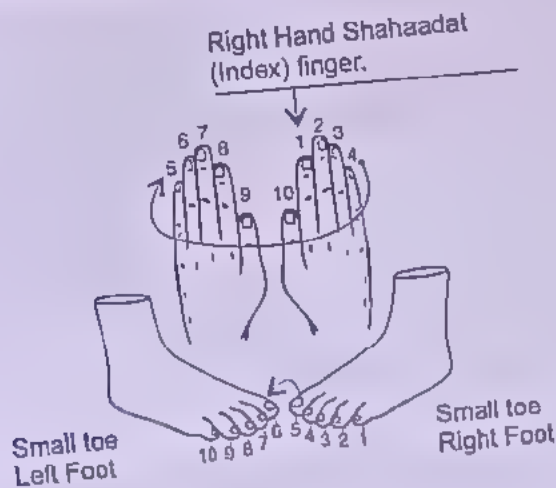
Haidh: the female monthly period of menstruation. The maximum period of ten days.

Nifaas: the blood which flows after childbirth the maximum period is forty days.

SEQUENCE TO BE FOLLOWED IN CLIPPING OF THE FINGER AND TOE NAILS

Clipping of the finger nails should begin at the SHAHAADAT finger (index finger of the right hand). The nails of the balance three fingers (of the right hand) should be clipped next, in order. Thereafter continue with the small finger of the left hand and complete the remaining three fingers and thumb, in sequence. Lastly, clip the nail of the right thumb.

Clipping of the TOE nails should begin at the small toe of the RIGHT foot and end at the small toe of the LEFT foot, in order.



QUESTIONS

- True or False
 - GHUSL will be VALID if one does not make the NIYYAH _____
 - One must face the QIBLA while making GHUSL _____
 - It is better to READ KALIMAH while GHUSL (bathing) _____
 - GHUSL will NOT be valid if the mouth is thoroughly rinsed once _____
 - In GHUSL it is COMPULSORY to wet the base of each and every hair _____
 - It is SUNNAT to clean the body by rubbing it whilst making GHUSL? _____
 - For GHUSL to be valid RINGS and EARRINGS, must be removed _____
 - It is necessary to repeat the WHOLE GHUSL if any portion of the body is left dry _____
 - It is preferable to do WUDHU again immediately after completing the Ghisl _____
- Is it permissible to leave the head dry during a FARDH Ghisl?
- If, due to some illness, a person did not wash his head during a FARDH Ghisl then is it necessary to repeat the entire Ghisl?
- What is the ruling of the Shariat regarding the covering of the body?
- What should be done regarding the ointment on a wound?
- What should a person do if it is realized after a Fardh Ghisl that some hard food particle was stuck between the teeth? Why is this necessary?
- After Ghisl, if a person performs Salaat without performing Wudhu, then is such a Salaat accepted?
- Is it permissible to remove the hair, clip the finger nails or have a haircut in the states of Janaabat?
- What is the maximum period that unwanted hair should be left from the body?
- If this period is exceeded, what will happen?
- What is the sequence to be followed when clipping the finger and toe nails?

Note

Ta

تَعْلِيمُ الْحَقِّ
Ta'leemul Haq

تیمم کا طریقہ
Tayammum
and Masah on the
Khuf-fain
(Water-proof socks)

TAYAMMUM کا بیان

DRY ABLUTION AND WIPING OVER SOCKS

پاک مٹی یا کسی ایسی چیز سے جو مٹی کے حکم میں ہو بدن کو نجاست حکم سے پاک کرنے کو تیمم کہتے ہیں۔
 ♦ To get rid of NAJAASATE HUKMIYYA by making use of clean earth or clay in a special way is called TAYAMMUM.

جب پانی نہ ملے یا پانی کے استعمال کرنے سے بیمار ہو جانے یا مرض بڑھ جانے کا اندیشہ ہو تو تیمم کرنا جائز ہوتا ہے۔
 ♦ TAYAMMUM is permitted when water is not available or when the use of water is injurious to health.

TAYAMMUM IS PERMITTED IN THE FOLLOWING CASES:

جب پانی ایک میل دور ہو یا کسی دشمن کے خوف سے پانی نہ لے سکتا ہو۔ مثلاً گھر سے باہر کنواں موجود ہے مگر ڈر ہے کہ گھر سے نکلا تو دشمن یا چور مار ڈالے گا یا کنوئیں کے پاس بڑا بھاری سانپ پھر رہا ہے یا شیر کھڑا ہے یا تھوڑا پانی اپنے پاس موجود ہے مگر ڈر ہے کہ اگر اسے وضو میں خرچ کر دیا تو یہ اس سے تکلیف ہوگی یا کنوئیں موجود ہے مگر ڈول رتی نہیں ہے یا پانی موجود ہے مگر یہ شخص اٹھ کر اسے نہیں سکتا ورنہ دوسرا آدمی موجود نہیں۔ یہ سب صورتیں پانی نہ ہونے کے حکم میں داخل ہیں۔

1. When water is not available within a radius of approximately 1.7 Kilometers (one mile).
2. When there is fear of any enemy or a dangerous animal or a snake near the water.
3. When the water is so little that, if the water is used up for Wudhu or Ghusl then there is fear of thirst.
4. When there is no rope or bucket to draw water from a well or one cannot reach water that is nearby (due to some reason) and no other person is available to fetch the water.

اس لیے تجربہ سے گمان غالب ہو جائے یا کسی بڑے قابل حکیم کے کہنے سے معلوم ہو کہ پانی کے استعمال کرنے سے بیمار ہو جائے گا تو تیمم درست ہوگا۔

5. When it is known by one's own experience or a capable doctor says that the use of water would definitely be injurious to one's health.
6. When one does not have sufficient amount of money to pay for water which is being sold.
7. Or if water is sold at a very ridiculous price.

جب انسان کسی ایسی جگہ پر ہو جہاں پانی موجود نہیں لیکن اسے کسی کے بتانے سے یا اپنی انگلی سے اس بات کا گمان غالب ہو جائے کہ پانی ایک میل کے اندر ہے تو پانی لانا اور وضو کرنا ضروری ہے، مگر جب کوئی بتانے والا بھی نہ ہو اور کسی طریقہ سے بھی پانی کا پتہ نہ چلے یا پانی کا پتہ تو چلے لیکن وہ ایک میل یا اس سے زیادہ دور ہو تو پھر پانی لانا ضروری نہیں تیمم کر لینا جائز ہے۔

8. One is at a place where there is no water, he himself guesses or someone tells him that water is available within approx one mile. It will now be necessary to fetch water and perform Wudhu.
9. It will not be necessary to fetch water if:
 - a. there is no trace of water;
 - b. no one is present to give information regarding water;
 - c. It is believed that water will be found after a distance of approx. 1 mile or more.
 - d. Tayammum will now be permissible for Wudhu.

10. If so little water is available that a person can only carry out the four FARAA'ID of WUDHU, then TAYAMMUM is not permissible.
11. If something NAJIS had fallen on the ground or sand etc., it is not permissible to use that earth for TAYAMMUM even if it dries up. But Namaaz on that place is permissible after it has become dry.

12. Q: If there is very little water, and one is in need of GHUSL or WUDHU and his clothes and body is also NAJIS (Napaak) what should one do?

A: **First:** One should wash off the NAJAASAT from one's body and clothes.

Then: Do TAYAMMUM.

FARAA-IDH of TAYAMMUM (Compulsory Acts)

تیم میں تین فرض ہیں ♦ THERE ARE 3 FARZ IN TAYAMMUM

نیست کرنا

❶ NIYYAT (intention)



دونوں ہاتھ مٹی پر مار کر منہ پر پھیرنا

❷ Striking both hands on earth and rubbing them on the face.



دونوں ہاتھ مٹی پر مار کر دونوں ہاتھوں کو کہنیوں سمیت ملنا

❸ Striking both hands on earth and rubbing both forearms including the elbows.



تیم کا سنت طریقہ

MASNOON WAY OF TAYAMMUM

♦ FIRST RECITE:

بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ الرَّحْمٰنِ الرَّحِیْمِ

BISMILLAAHIR-RAHMAANIR-RAHEEM

♦ AND MAKE NIYYAT

غسل کے لیے تیمم کرنا ہو تو دل سے یہ ارادہ کرے کہ ”میں غسل کے لیے تیمم کرتا ہوں۔“

For GHUSL one should make the intention:
"I am making TAYAMMUM for GHUSL".

وضو کے لیے تیمم کرنا ہو تو دل سے یہ ارادہ کرے کہ ”میں وضو کے لیے تیمم کرتا ہوں۔“

For WUDHU one should make the intention:
"I am making TAYAMMUM for WUDHU".

1 FIRST

اول نیت کرو کہ میں ناپاکی دور کرنے اور نماز پڑھنے کے لئے تیمم کرنا ہوں۔

- ◆ Make NIYYAT or intention in the following way :
"O Allah, I am making TAYAMMUM for WUDHU or GHUSL,
to perform my SALAAH or recite the QURAAN SHARIF, etc."

2 SECOND

پھر دونوں ہاتھ مٹی کے بڑے ڈھیلے پر مار کر انہیں جھاڑ دو۔ زیادہ مٹی لگ جائے تو منہ سے پھونک دو اور دونوں ہاتھوں کو منہ پر اس طرح پھیرو کہ باقی جگہ باقی نہ رہ جائے ایک بال برابر جگہ چھوٹ جائے گی تو تیمم جائز نہ ہوگا۔

Strike both hands on clean earth or dust. Then dust the hands and blow off the excess dust or earth on the hands.



Rub both the hands over the complete face without leaving a hair's breadth of space.

3 THIRD

پھر دوسری مرتبہ دونوں ہاتھ مٹی پر مارو اور انہیں جھاڑ کر پہلے بائیں ہاتھ کی چاروں انگلیاں سیدھے ہاتھ کی انگلیوں کے سروں کے نیچے رکھ کر کھینچتے ہوئے کہنی تک لے جاؤ اس طرح لے جانے میں سیدھے ہاتھ کے اوپر کی طرف کہنی سے انگلیوں تک کھینچتے ہوئے لاؤ اور بائیں ہاتھ کے انگوٹھے کے اندر کی جانب کو سیدھے ہاتھ کے انگوٹھے کی پشت پر پھیرو۔ پھر اسی طرح سیدھے ہاتھ کو بائیں ہاتھ پر پھیرو۔

Strike both hands again on the ground. Then dust the hands and blow off the excess dust.



Rub the left hand over the complete
RIGHT hand including the elbow.



Rub the right hand over the complete
LEFT hand including the elbow.

پھر انگلیوں کا خلال کرو اگر انگوٹھی پہنے ہوئے ہو تو اسے اتارنا یا ہلانا ضروری ہے۔ ڈاڑھی کا خلال کرنا بھی سنت ہے۔

Then do KHILAL of fingers. If one is wearing a ring
it is necessary to remove it or at least revolve it.



It is SUNNAT to do KHILAL of the beard also.



وضو اور غسل دونوں کا تیمم جائز ہے

**TAYAMMUM IS ALLOWED FOR BOTH
WUDHU AND GHUSL**

پاک مٹی و ریت اور پتھر اور چونا اور مٹی کے کپے یا پکے برتن جن پر روغن نہ ہو اور مٹی کی کچی یا پکی اینٹیں اور مٹی یا اینٹوں یا پتھر یا چونے کی دیوار اور گرو اور ملتان پر تیمم کرنا جائز ہے۔ اسی طرح پاک غبار سے بھی تیمم کرنا جائز ہے۔

ITEMS ON WHICH TAYAMMUM IS PERMITTED

1. Taahir earth.
2. Sand.
3. Stone.
4. Limestone.
5. Baked earthen pots (Unglazed).
6. Walls of mud, stone or brick.
7. Clay.
8. All items which have thick dust on them.

لکڑی، لوہا، سونا، چاندی، تانبہ، پتیل، المونیم، شیشہ، رانگ، جست، گیہوں، جوا اور تمام غلے، کپڑا، راکھ ان تمام چیزوں پر ناجائز ہے۔ یوں سمجھو کہ جو چیزیں آگ میں پگھل جاتی ہیں یا جل کر راکھ ہو جاتی ہیں ان پر تیمم ناجائز ہے۔

ITEMS ON WHICH TAYAMMUM IS NOT PERMITTED

1. Wood.
2. Metal.
3. Glass.
4. Food items.
5. All items which burn to ash, rot or melt.

جن چیزوں پر ہم نے تیمم جائز بتایا ہے ان پر غبار ہونے کی شرط نہیں ہے۔ پتھر یا اینٹ یا مٹی کے برتن دھلے ہوئے ہوں جب بھی ان پر تیمم جائز ہے۔

- ◆ Things on which TAYAMMUM is allowed need not be covered with dust.
- ◆ If there is a stone brick or clay pot, it can be used for TAYAMMUM even after it was washed clean and has no dust on it.
- ◆ TAYAMMUM is permissible if one is on the point of missing the: JANAZA NAMA'AZ or EIDAIN NAMA'AZ

There is no Qazaa for these two Nama'az.

گر پانی نہ ملنے کی وجہ سے تیمم کر لیا اور نماز پڑھ لی پھر پانی مل گیا تو نماز ہو گئی۔ اب اسے دہانے کی حاجت نہیں، چاہے پانی وقت کے اندر ملا ہو یا وقت کے بعد۔

- ◆ It will not be necessary to repeat the Nama'az already performed if water is found after the Nama'az.

جب تک پانی نہ ملے یا عذر باقی رہے تیمم جائز ہے اگر اسی حال میں کئی سال گزر جائیں تو کچھ مضائقہ نہیں۔

- ◆ The duration of TAYAMMUM is as long as water is not available or the helplessness continues. This can last for years.



نواقض تیمم

NAWAQISE (Breakers of) TAYAMMUM

جن چیزوں سے وضو ٹوٹتا ہے ان سے تیمم بھی ٹوٹ جاتا ہے۔ ہاں غسل کا تیمم صرف حدیث اکبر سے ٹوٹتا ہے اور اگر پانی نہ ملنے کی وجہ سے تیمم کیا تھا تو وہ تیمم پانی پر قدرت حاصل ہو جانے سے بھی ٹوٹ جاتا ہے۔ اور اگر کسی اور عذر مثلاً مرض وغیرہ کی وجہ سے تیمم کیا تھا تو اس عذر کے جاتے رہنے سے بھی تیمم ٹوٹ جاتا ہے۔

- ◆ Things which break WUDHU also break TAYAMMUM.
- ◆ TAYAMMUM for GHUSL breaks only after HADASE AKBAR.
- ◆ TAYAMMUM done when water is not found breaks when water is found.
- ◆ Tayammum done due to a disease breaks when one is cured from that disease.

ایک تیمم سے جب تک وہ ٹوٹے نہیں جتنے وقتوں کی چاہو نماز پڑھ سکتے ہو۔ اسی طرح فرض نماز کے لئے جو تیمم کیا ہے اس سے نفل نماز اور نفل نماز اور قرآن مجید کی تلاوت اور جنازے کی نماز اور سجدہ تلاوت اور تمام عبادتیں جائز ہیں۔

- ◆ One can perform any number of Namaaz by one TAYAMMUM as long as it does not break.
- ◆ TAYAMMUM done for FARZ Namaaz will be valid for NAFL, for reading the HOLY QURAN, Janaza Namaaz, Sajdah-e-Tilaawat and for all the kinds of Namaaz.

MASAH ON THE KHUFFAIN (MOZAH)

- ◆ KHUFFAIN are special types of socks. Instead of washing the feet during Wudhu, it is permissible to pass moist hands over such socks. This is known as MASAH ALAL KHUFFAIN.

THE CONDITIONS FOR MASAH:

1. The socks must be strong enough to enable walking in them on roads for approximately three miles without the socks tearing.
2. The socks should remain in position (covering the foreleg) without being tied. They should not slip. Socks which have elastic sewn into them (to keep them in position) will be regarded as being tied.

3. Water must not be able to seep through.

4. The socks must not be transparent or even semitransparent.

AYAMMUM

یہ نماز ہے ان سے تیمم بھی
ہوگا تیمم پانی پر قدرت
مقرر کے جاتے رہنے سے

AYAMMUM.

HADASE AKBAR

id breaks when

KS when one is

رکعتوں کے نہیں جتنے وقتوں کی

مذاہر آن مجید کی تلاوت اور جنت
TAYAMMUM

will be valid for NAFL
Jamaaz, Sajdah-e-Tib

FAIN (MOZAH)

cks. Instead of wash
ass moist hands over
FFAIN.

FOR MASAH:

gh to enable walking
s without the socks team

tion (covering the fore
socks which have elastic
arded as being

◆ If any one of the four conditions is lacking, Masah on such socks will not be permissible. Khuffain on which Masah is made are generally made of leather. The type of socks Woolen, Nylon, etc., generally worn nowadays is not classified as "Khuffain". It is, therefore, not permissible to make Masah on them. If socks are made of a material other than leather and the aforementioned four requirements are met, Masah will be permissible on them.

◆ For the Masah Alal Khuffain to be valid, it is essential to put on the Khuffain after complete Wudhu has been made. If the Khuffain have been put on before a complete Wudhu has been made, Masah on them will not be permissible. Firstly, a complete Wudhu has to be made, then only should the Khuffain be put on. Thereafter if Wudhu breaks, it will be permissible to make Masah Alal Khuffain without washing the feet when Wudhu is being made.

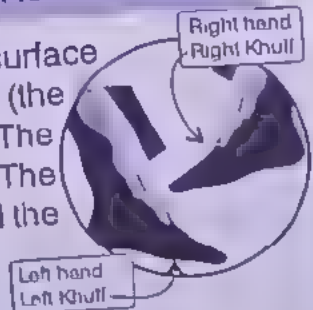
◆ For a MUQEEM (one who is not a traveler - MUSAAFIR) Masah Alal Khuffain is valid for a period of 24 hours. For a MUSAAFIR the period permissible is up to 72 hours.

◆ The period of 24 or 72 hours will be reckoned from the time the Wudhu (after which the Khuffain were put on) breaks, not from the time the Khuffain were put on. For example, a Muqeem makes Wudhu at 6 p.m. and after completing his Wudhu he puts on Khuffain. At 8 p.m. his Wudhu breaks, twenty-four hours will be reckoned from 8 p.m. Hence, it will be permissible for him to make Masah Alal Khuffain each time he makes Wudhu until 8 p.m. the next day.

◆ Upon expiry of 24 hours, Masah Alal Khuffain will no longer be valid. When the period of (24 hours for the Muqeem and 72 hours for the Musafir) expires, the KHUFFAIN should be removed and the FEET washed. It is not necessary to renew the WUDHU.

THE METHOD OF MASAH ON KHUFFAIN IS AS FOLLOWS

◆ Draw the fingers of the right hand on the upper surface of the Khuffain starting from the toes and ending (the Masah) at the foreleg (just above the ankle). The Masah should be done once only on each sock. The right hand should be used for the right Khuff and the left hand for the left Khuff.



- ◆ If the back of the hand was used to make the Masah, it will be valid. However, one should not unnecessarily depart from the correct Sunnah method.
- ◆ It is not permissible to make Masah on the side or at the under surface of the Khuffain. It is FARDH to make Masah on each sock to the extent of three full fingers, i.e. the full surface area of three fingers must be drawn from the toes to the foreleg.
- ◆ The following acts will nullify the Masah which was made on the Khuffain:
 1. All things which break Wudhu.
 2. Removal of the Khuff (sock).
 3. The expiry of the period, i.e. 24 hours for the Muqem and 72 hours for the Musafir.
- ◆ If only one sock was removed then, too, it is Wajib to remove the other one and wash both feet.
- ◆ Even if only the foreleg is exposed by lowering the Khuff, it will be regarded as if the whole sock has been removed. It will then be **COMPULSORY** to remove the Khuffain and wash both feet.
 1. It is not permissible to make Masah on a Khuff which is torn to such an extent that an area equal to the size of three small toes is exposed. It is permissible to make Masah on the sock if it is torn less than this.
 2. If the seam of the Khuff comes loose, but while walking the foot is not exposed, Masah on such Khuffain will be valid.
 3. If a Muqem who has made Masah Alal Khuffain goes on a journey before the expiry of 24 hours, then his masah may be extended to 72 hours. His Masah will now be valid for 72 hours.
 4. If a Musafir who has made Masah Alal Khuffain, returns to his home town then his Masah will be valid for only 24 hours.
 5. It is permissible to make Masah on ordinary woolen, etc, socks which have been covered with leather.
 6. If Ghusl becomes compulsory then Masah Alal Khuffain will not be permissible even if the valid period has not yet expired. The Khuffain must be removed when the Ghusl is taken and the feet washed.
 7. If after making Masah one sets foot in a puddle of water and water enters the Khuff wetting more than half the foot, then Masah will be not sufficient. Both Khuffain must be removed and the feet washed.

موزوں پر مسح کرنے کا بیان

مسئلہ: اگر چڑے کے موزے وضو کر کے پہن لیوے اور پھر وضو ٹوٹ جاوے تو پھر وضو کرتے وقت موزوں پر مسح کر لینا درست ہے اور اگر موزہ اتار کر پیر دھولیا کرے تو یہ سب سے بہتر ہے۔ مسئلہ: اگر وہ موزہ اتنا چھوٹا ہے کہ ٹخنے موزے کے اندر چھپے ہوئے نہ ہوں تو اس پر مسح درست نہیں اسی طرح اگر بغیر وضو کے موزہ پہن لیا تو اس پر بھی مسح درست نہیں اتار کر پیر دھونا چاہئے۔ مسئلہ: اگر کوئی ایسی بات ہو گئی جس سے نہانا واجب ہو گیا تو موزہ اتار کر نہا دے غسل کے ساتھ موزہ پر مسح کرنا درست نہیں۔ مسئلہ: موزہ کے اوپر کی طرف مسح کرے تو بے کی طرف مسح نہ کرے۔ مسئلہ: موزہ پر مسح کرنے کا طریقہ یہ ہے: ہاتھ کی انگلیاں ٹڑ کر آگے کی طرف رکھے، انگلیاں تو سمیچی موزہ پر رکھ دیوے اور ہتھیلی موزے سے الگ رکھے پھر ان کو کھینچ کر ٹخنے کی طرف لے جاوے اور اگر انگلیوں کے ساتھ ساتھ ہتھیلی بھی رکھ دے اور ہتھیلی سمیت انگلیوں کو کھینچ کر لے جاوے تو بھی درست ہے۔ مسئلہ: اگر کوئی الٹا مسح کرے یعنی ٹخنے کی طرف سے کھینچ کر انگلیوں کی طرف لاوے تو بھی جائز ہے لیکن مستحب کے خلاف ہے، ایسے ہی اگر لمبائی میں مسح نہ کرے تو چوڑائی میں مسح کرے تو یہ بھی درست ہے لیکن مستحب کے خلاف ہے۔ مسئلہ: اگر تلوے یا ایڑی یا موزہ کے اغل بغل میں مسح کرے تو یہ مسح درست نہیں ہوا۔ مسئلہ: اگر پوری انگلیوں کو موزہ پر نہیں رکھا بلکہ فقط انگلیوں کا سر موزہ پر رکھ دیا اور انگلیاں کھڑی رکھیں تو یہ مسح درست نہیں ہوا، البتہ اگر انگلیوں سے پانی ٹپک رہا ہو جس سے بہہ کر تین انگلیوں کے برابر پانی موزہ کو لگ جاوے تو درست ہو جاوے گا۔ مسئلہ: مسح میں مستحب تو یہی ہے کہ ہتھیلی کی طرف سے مسح کرے اور اگر کوئی ہتھیلی کے اوپر کی طرف مسح کرے تو بھی درست ہے۔ مسئلہ: اگر کسی نے موزہ پر مسح نہیں کیا لیکن پانی برستے وقت باہر نکلی یا بھیگی گھاس میں چلی تو مسح ہو گیا۔ مسئلہ: ہاتھ کی تین انگلیاں بھر ہر موزہ پر مسح کرنا فرض ہے اس سے کم میں مسح درست نہ ہوگا۔ مسئلہ: جو چیز وضو توڑ دیتی ہے اس سے مسح بھی ٹوٹ جاتا ہے اور موزوں کے اتار دینے سے بھی مسح ٹوٹ جاتا ہے، تو اگر کسی کا وضو نہیں ٹوٹا لیکن اس نے موزے اتار ڈالے تو مسح جاتا رہا اب دونوں پیر دھو لیوے پھر سے وضو کرنے کی ضرورت نہیں ہے۔ مسئلہ: اگر ایک موزہ اتار ڈالا تو دوسرا موزہ بھی اتار کر دونوں پاؤں کا دھونا واجب ہے۔ مسئلہ: اگر مسح کی مدت پوری ہو گئی تو بھی مسح جاتا رہا اگر وضو نہ ٹوٹا ہو تو موزہ اتار کر دونوں پاؤں دھو دے پورے وضو کا ذکر انا واجب نہیں اور اگر وضو ٹوٹ گیا ہو تو موزہ اتار کر پورا وضو کرے۔ مسئلہ: موزہ پر مسح کرنے کے بعد کہیں پانی میں چیر پڑ گیا اور موزہ ڈھیلہ تھا اس لئے موزہ کے اندر پانی چلا گیا اور سارا پاؤں یا آدھے سے زیادہ پاؤں بھیگ گیا تو بھی مسح جاتا رہا۔ دوسرا موزہ بھی اتار دیوے اور دونوں پیر اچھی طرح سے دھو دے۔ مسئلہ: جو موزہ اتنا چھٹ گیا ہو کہ چلنے میں پیر کی چھوٹی تین انگلیوں کے برابر کھل جاتا ہو تو اس پر مسح درست نہیں اور اس سے کم کھلتا ہے تو مسح درست ہے۔

مسئلہ: اگر موزہ کی سیون کھل گئی لیکن اس میں سے پیر نہیں دکھائی دیتا تو صبح درست ہے اور اگر ایسا ہو کہ چلتے وقت تو تین انگلیوں کے برابر پیر دکھائی دیتا ہے اور یوں نہیں دکھائی دیتا تو صبح درست ہے۔ مسئلہ: اگر ایک موزہ میں دو انگلیوں کے برابر کھل جاتا ہے اور دوسرے موزے میں ایک انگلی کے برابر تو کچھ حرج نہیں صبح جائز ہے۔ اور اگر ایک ہی موزہ کئی جگہ سے پھٹا ہے اور سب ملا کر تین انگلیوں کے برابر کھل جاتا ہے تو صبح جائز نہیں۔ اور اگر اتنا کم ہے کہ سب ملا کر بھی پوری تین انگلیوں کے برابر نہیں ہوتا تو صبح درست ہے۔

مسئلہ: مسافرت میں تین دن رات تک موزوں پر صبح کرنا درست ہے اور جو مسافرت میں نہ ہو اس کو ایک دن ایک رات اور جس وقت سے وضو ٹوٹا ہے اس وقت سے ایک دن ایک رات تک یا تین دن تین رات کا حساب کیا جاویگا۔ جس وقت سے موزہ پہنا ہے اس کا اعتبار نہ کریں گے جیسے کسی نے ظہر کے وقت وضو کر کے موزہ پہنا پھر سورج ڈوبنے کے وقت وضو ٹوٹا، اگلے دن کے سورج ڈوبنے تک صبح کرنا درست ہے اور مسافرت میں تیسرے دن کے سورج ڈوبنے تک، جب سورج ڈوب گیا تو ب صبح کرنا بھی درست نہیں رہا۔ مسئلہ: کسی نے سوزہ پر صبح کرنا شروع کیا اور ابھی ایک دن رات گزرنے نہ پایا تھا کہ مسافر ہو گئی تو تین دن رات تک صبح کرتی رہے اور اگر سفر سے پہلے ہی ایک دن رات گزر جاوے تو مذمت ختم ہو چکی، پیر دھو کر پھر موزہ پہنے۔ مسئلہ: اگر مسافرت میں صبح کرتی تھی پھر پہنچ گئی تو اگر ایک دن رات پورا ہو چکا ہے تو اب موزہ اتار دے اب اس پر صبح درست نہیں اور اگر ابھی ایک دن رات بھی پورا نہیں ہوا تو ایک دن رات پورا کرے اس سے زیادہ تک صبح درست نہیں۔

QUESTIONS

1. What is Tayammum?
2. Mention seven instances when Tayammum is permissible.
3. Can Tayammum and Salaah be made on ground on which something Najis has fallen and become dry?
4. If a person's body and clothes are Najis and the person is in need of Wudhu or Ghushl, then what should he do if the time for Salaat has come and he has very little water?
5. Mention the compulsory acts of Tayammum.
6. Explain in detail and in correct order the Masnoon procedure of Tayammum.
7. Should the Khilal of fingers and the beard be done during Tayammum?
8. What is it to make Khilal of the fingers and beard during Tayammum?
9. Mention eight items on which Tayammum is permitted.
10. Is Tayammum permissible for Wudhu and Ghushl or only for Wudhu?
11. Mention five items on which Tayammum is not permitted.
12. Is it necessary for items to cover with dust for Tayammum?
13. Can a stone, brick or clay pot be used for Tayammum even though it has been washed and is free from dust.
14. If one has the fear of missing _____ Salaah and _____ Salaah, it is permissible to make Tayammum.
15. Name two Salaat for which there is no Qazaa.
16. If water is found after Salaat has been performed, is it necessary to repeat the said Salaat?
17. What is the duration of Tayammum?
18. Mention the Nawaqis of Tayammum.
19. When does Tayammum for Ghushl break?
20. Can the performance of one Tayammum be valid for a number of Salaat?
21. Explain the word "KHUFFAIN".
22. What is Masah Alal Khuffain?
23. Mention the four conditions of Masah.
24. What will happen if a condition is lacking?
25. Is it permissible to make Masah on nylon or woolen socks?
26. What is essential for the Masah to be valid?
27. Will Masah be permissible if the Khuffain have been put on after an incomplete Wudhu?
28. What is the period of Masah for a Musaaifir?
29. For what period can a Muqeem make Masah?
30. From when will the period of 24 or 72 hours be calculated?
31. What will happen upon the expiry of this period?
32. What should be done upon the expiry of this period? Is it necessary to renew the entire Wudhu?
33. What is the method of Masah Alal Khuffain?

Note

تَعْلِيمُ الْحَقِّ
Ta'leemul Haq

اذان کا بیان
Azaan
The Call Towards
Namaaz

6

AZAAAN اذان کا بیان

The Call towards Namaaz

- ◆ پانچ فرض نمازوں اور جمعہ کی نماز کے لئے اذان مسنون ہے، ان کے علاوہ اور کسی نماز کے لئے اذان مسنون نہیں۔
- ◆ AZAAN is SUNNAT only for the five FARZ NAMAANZ and for JUMAH NAMAANZ.
- ◆ اذان کے معنی خبر کرنے کے ہیں لیکن شریعت میں خاص نمازوں کے لئے خاص الفاظ سے خبر کرنے کو اذان کہتے ہیں۔
- ◆ AZAAN is not required for any other Namaaz.
- ◆ ہر فرض نماز کی اذان اس کے وقت میں کہنی چاہئے۔ اگر وقت سے پہلے کہہ دی تو وقت آنے پر دوبارہ کہی جائے۔
- ◆ AZAAN means to inform, but in Shariat, AZAAN means to inform of a particular Namaaz in particular wordings.
- ◆ The AZAAN for every Farz Namaaz should be called out in its prescribed time.
- ◆ If it was called before the time then it must be called again at the right time.

HOW TO CALL OUT AZAAN

- ◆ When the time for Namaaz comes the MOAZZIN stands up and calls out aloud these words:

اللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ اللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ

Allahu Akbar, Allahu Akbar

اللہ سب سے بڑا ہے، اللہ سب سے بڑا ہے۔

Allah is the greatest of all
Allah is the greatest of all.

اللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ اللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ

Allahu Akbar, Allahu Akbar

اللہ سب سے بڑا ہے، اللہ سب سے بڑا ہے۔

Allah is the greatest of all
Allah is the greatest of all.

أَشْهَدُ أَنْ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ ط

Ash-hadu allaa ilaaha illallaah

میں گواہی دیتا ہوں کہ اللہ کے سوا کوئی معبود نہیں

I testify that there is none worthy of worship but Allah.

أَشْهَدُ أَنْ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ ط

Ash-hadu allaa ilaaha illallaah

میں گواہی دیتا ہوں کہ اللہ کے سوا کوئی معبود نہیں

I testify that there is none worthy of worship but Allah.

أَشْهَدُ أَنْ مُحَمَّدًا رَسُولُ اللَّهِ ط

Ash hadu an-na Muhammadar-rasulullah

میں گواہی دیتا ہوں کہ حضرت محمد (ﷺ) اللہ کے رسول ہیں

I testify that Muhammad (ﷺ) is Allah's Messenger.

أَشْهَدُ أَنْ مُحَمَّدًا رَسُولُ اللَّهِ ط

Ash hadu an-na Muhammadar-rasulullah

میں گواہی دیتا ہوں کہ حضرت محمد (ﷺ) اللہ کے رسول ہیں

I testify that Muhammad (ﷺ) is Allah's Messenger.

Turn the Face Right when saying:

حَيَّ عَلَى الصَّلَاةِ ط

Hayya 'alas salaah

آؤ نماز پڑھنے کے لیے

Come for Namaaz



حَيَّ عَلَى الصَّلَاةِ ط

Hayya 'alas salaah

آؤ نماز پڑھنے کے لیے

Come for Namaaz

Turn the Face Left when saying:

حَيَّ عَلَى الْفَلَاحِ ط

Hayya 'alal falaah

آؤ نجات پانے کے لیے

Come to success.



حَيَّ عَلَى الْفَلَاحِ ط

Hayya 'alal falaah

آؤ نجات پانے کے لیے

Come to success.

اللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ اللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ ط

Allahu Akbar, Allahu Akbar

اللہ سب سے بڑا ہے، اللہ سب سے بڑا ہے۔

Allah is the greatest of all
Allah is the greatest of all.

لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ ط

laa ilaaha illallaah

اللہ کے سوا کوئی معبود نہیں

There is none worthy of worship besides Allah

- ◆ Only In the **Azan of Fajr** after "Hayya alal falah" Say twice:

الصَّلَاةُ خَيْرٌ مِنَ النَّوْمِ
As Salaatu Khairum Minan Naum

نماز نیند سے بہتر ہے
Namaz is better than sleep

الصَّلَاةُ خَيْرٌ مِنَ النَّوْمِ
As Salaatu Khairum Minan Naum

نماز نیند سے بہتر ہے
Namaz is better than sleep

- ◆ and In Fajr Azan after hearing the above
(As Salaatu Khairum Minan Naum) one should say:

صَدَقْتَ وَبَرَرْتَ ط

Sadaqta Wa-ba Rarta

"You have spoken the truth and you have done good."

DUAA AFTER AZAAN

اَللّٰهُمَّ رَبِّ هَذِهِ الدَّعْوَةِ التَّامَّةِ وَالصَّلَاةِ الْقَائِمَةِ
اَتِ مُحَمَّدًا الْوَسِيْلَةَ وَالْفَضِيْلَةَ وَاَبْعَثْهُ مَقَامًا
مَّخْمُوْدًا الَّذِي وَعَدْتَهُ اِنَّكَ لَا تُخْلِفُ الْبِعَادَ.

Allaahumma Rabba haazihid-da 'watit-taammati wassalaatil-qaa'imati, aati Muhammada nil-waseelata wal-fazeelata, wab 'ath-hu maqaamam-mahmooda nil-lazee wa'attahu, 'innaka laa tukhliful-mee'aad.

O Allah! Lord of this perfect Call and of the Salaat about to be established bestow upon Muhammad (ﷺ) the Waseelah (intercession), Grace and the lofty rank. Establish him on Makaame Mahmood which You have promised him. Verily, you do not go against the Promise.

اذان میں سات باتیں مستحب ہیں

THERE ARE 7 MUSTAHABS IN AZAAN

- (۱) قبلہ کی طرف منہ کر کے کھڑے ہونا۔
 - (۲) اذان کے کلمات ٹھہر ٹھہر کر کہنا یعنی جلدی نہ کرنا۔
 - (۳) اذان کہتے وقت دونوں شہادت کی انگلیاں کانوں میں رکھنا۔
 - (۴) اونچی جگہ پر اذان کہنا۔
 - (۵) بلند آواز سے اذان کہنا۔
 - (۶) حَتَّى عَلَى الصَّلَاةِ کہتے وقت دائیں جانب اور حَتَّى عَلَى الْفَلَاحِ کہتے وقت بائیں جانب منہ پھیرنا۔
 - (۷) فجر کی اذان میں حَتَّى عَلَى الْفَلَاحِ کے بعد الصَّلَاةُ خَيْرٌ مِنَ التَّوْبَةِ دو بار کہنا۔
- ♦ اذان بے وضو کہنا جائز ہے، مگر اس کی عادت کر لینا برا ہے۔
- ♦ اذان سنت ہے، لیکن چونکہ اذان سے اسلام کی ایک خاص شان ظاہر ہوتی ہے اس لئے اس کی تاکید بہت ہے۔

1. To stand facing the QIBLAH.
2. Not to make haste in saying Azaan.
3. To put both index fingers in the ears.
4. To call Azaan from a high place.
5. To say Azaan in a loud voice.
6. To turn the face right when saying:

حَتَّى عَلَى الصَّلَاةِ حَتَّى عَلَى الْفَلَاحِ Hayya 'alas salaah and Hayya 'alal falaah
الصَّلَاةُ خَيْرٌ مِنَ التَّوْبَةِ twice
حَتَّى عَلَى الْفَلَاحِ after 'Hayya alal falaah' in the Azaan of FAJR Salaah.

- ♦ Saying AZAAN without Wudhu is permissible but it is bad to make a habit of it.
- ♦ AZAAN is SUNNAT, but as it reveals a special glory of Islam, much stress is laid on it.

اقامت IQAAMAT

س: اقامت کے کتے ہیں؟

ج: فرض نماز شروع کرتے وقت یہی کلمات جو اذان میں کہے جاتے ہیں مگر **حَيَّ عَلَى الْفَلَاحِ** کے بعد قامت میں **قَدْ قَامَتِ الصَّلَاةُ** دو مرتبہ اذان کے کلموں سے زیادہ کہا جاتا ہے۔

Q. What is IQAAMAT?

A. IQAAMAT is to repeat the wordings of AZAAN at the beginning of FARZ Salaah.

◆ BUT IN IQAAMAT AFTER: **Hayya 'alal falah SAY TWICE**

قَدْ قَامَتِ الصَّلَاةُ قَدْ قَامَتِ الصَّلَاةُ

Qad qaamatis salaahu Qad qaamatis salaah

تحقیق نماز (کی جماعت) کھڑی ہو گئی، تحقیق نماز (کی جماعت) کھڑی ہو گئی۔

The (Jammah) prayer is ready, The (Jammah) prayer is ready

◆ In TAKBIR (IQAAMAT) after hearing
Qad qaa-ma tis-Salaah ONE SHOULD SAY :

أَقَامَهَا اللَّهُ وَأَدَامَهَا

Aqaa-mahallaahu wa adaa-maha

May Allah establish it, and keep it forever.

اقامت بے وضو مکروہ ہے۔

◆ Saying Iqaamat without Wudhu is MAKROOH.

اذان اور اقامت صرف مردوں کے لئے سنت ہے۔

◆ AZAAN and IQAAMAT are SUNNAT for MEN only.

اقامت فرض نمازوں کے لئے سنت ہے، فرض نمازوں کے علاوہ کسی نماز کے لئے مسنون نہیں۔

◆ Iqaama is SUNNAT for FARZ Salaah only. It is not Sunnah for any other Salaah.

س: اگر کسی وقت کوئی شخص اپنے گھر میں فرض نماز پڑھ لے تو اذان اور اقامت کہے یا نہیں؟
ج: محد کی مسجد کی اذان اور اقامت کافی ہے، لیکن کہہ لے تو اچھا ہے۔

Q. If anyone performs his Farz Salaat at home, should he say Azaan and Iqaama?

A. Azaan and Iqaama in the neighboring Masjid will be sufficient, but it is better to say them at home also.

س: مسافر حالت سفر میں اذان و اقامت کہے یا نہیں؟
ج: ہاں حالت سفر میں جب آبادی سے باہر ہو اذان اور اقامت دونوں کہنی چاہئیں، لیکن اگر اذان نہ کہے صرف اقامت کہہ لے جب بھی مضائقہ نہیں اور دونوں کو چھوڑ دینا مکروہ ہے۔

Q. Should a traveler say Azaan and Iqaama during a journey?

A. Yes, both Azan and Iqaama should be said when one is at a lonely place. It won't matter if one says only Iqaama and not Azaan. However, it is Makrooh to leave the both.

س: اذان ایک شخص کہے اور اقامت دوسرا کہہ دے تو یہ جائز ہے یا نہیں؟
ج: اگر اذان کہنے والا موجود نہ ہو یا موجود ہو مگر دوسرے شخص کے اقامت کہنے سے ناراض نہ ہو تو جائز ہے، لیکن اگر اس کو ناخوشی ہو تو مکروہ ہے۔

Q. Is it permissible if one person says the Azaan and another says the Iqaama?

A. If one who said the Azaan is not present or if he is there but does not mind, then another person may say Iqaama. If the person who said Azaan minds, then it is Makrooh for another person to say the Iqaama.

س: اذان کے بعد کتنی دیر ٹھہر کر اقامت کہنی چاہیے؟
ج: مغرب کی اذان کے بعد اور سب وقتوں میں اتنی دیر ٹھہرنا چاہیے کہ جو لوگ کھانے پینے میں مشغول ہوں یا پانچخانہ پیشاب کر رہے ہوں وہ فارغ ہو کر نماز میں شریک ہو سکیں اور مغرب کی اذان کے بعد بعد رتین آیتیں پڑھنے کے ٹھہر کر تکبیر کہے۔

Q. How much time should be allowed to pass between Azaan and Iqaama?

A. In all Salaat except Maghreb, one should wait for the Iqaama till the persons who are eating or are in the toilet can join the Salaah. In Maghreb Salaat it is advisable that after the Azaan, Iqaama should be said after the lapse of the time equal to the reciting of THREE AAYATS.

IJAABAT اجابت

- ◆ Repeating the words of Azaan and Iqaama is called IJAABAT.

س: اذان اور اقامت کی اجابت کسے کہتے ہیں اور اس کا کیا حکم ہے؟

ج: اذان اور اقامت دونوں کی اجابت مستحب ہے اور اجابت سے مراد یہ ہے کہ سننے والے بھی وہی کلمہ کہتے ہائیں جو مؤذن یا مکبر کہتا ہے مگر حئی عَلَى الصَّلَاةِ اور حئی عَلَى الْفَلَاحِ سن کر لَا حَوْلَ وَلَا قُوَّةَ إِلَّا بِاللّٰهِ کہنا چاہیے اور فجر کی اذان میں الصَّلَاةُ خَيْرٌ مِنَ التَّوْمُرِ سن کر صَدَقْتَ وَبَرَزْتَ کہنا چاہیے اور تکبیر میں قَدْ قَامَتِ الصَّلَاةُ سن کر اَقَامَهَا اللّٰهُ وَاَدَامَهَا کہنا چاہیے۔

Q. What is IJAABAT for Azaan and Iqaama and what is the order for that?

A. Ijaabat for both and Iqaama is MUSTAHAB. Ijaabat means that those hearing should repeat the wordings as the **Muazzin** or **Mukabbir** says.

- ◆ HOWEVER, AFTER HEARING : حَى عَلَى الصَّلَاةِ — حَى عَلَى الْفَلَاحِ
Hayya 'alas-salaah and Hayya 'alal Falaah

one should say

لَا حَوْلَ وَلَا قُوَّةَ إِلَّا بِاللّٰهِ الْعَلِيِّ الْعَظِيمِ

Laa haw-la wa laa quwwa-ta illaa-billaa-hil 'aliyyil 'azeem.

There is no Power and might except from Allah.
The most high - The great.

- ◆ In Fajr Azan after hearing : الصَّلَاةُ خَيْرٌ مِنَ التَّوْمُرِ

As Salaatu Khairum Minan Naum

one should say

صَدَقْتَ وَبَرَزْتَ

Sadaqta Wa-ba Bara

- ◆ In Takbeer, after hearing : قَدْ قَامَتِ الصَّلَاةُ

Qad qaarnatis salaah

one should say

اَقَامَهَا اللّٰهُ وَاَدَامَهَا

Aqaa-mahallaahu wa adaa-maha

QUESTIONS

1. What does the word AZAAN mean?
2. What is the meaning of AZAAN in SHARIAT?
3. For which SALAAH is AZAAN SUNNAT?
4. What is the time for calling AZAAN?
5. What are the SEVEN MUSTAHABS in AZAAN?
6. What is IQAAMAT?
7. What is IJAABAT?
8. A person performs his FARZ SALAAH at home should he say AZAAN and IQAAMAT?
9. How is it to say AZAAN and IQAAMAT without WUDHU?
10. How long after AZAAN should IQAAMAT be said?
11. Should a TRAVELLER say AZAAN and IQAAMAT during a JOURNEY?
12. TRANSLATE THE FOLLOWING :

اللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ

أَشْهَدُ أَنْ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ

أَشْهَدُ أَنَّ مُحَمَّدًا رَسُولُ اللَّهِ

حَيَّ عَلَى الصَّلَاةِ

حَيَّ عَلَى الْفَلَاحِ

قَدْ قَامَتِ الصَّلَاةُ

الصَّلَاةُ خَيْرٌ مِنَ النَّوْمِ

لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ

صَدَقْتَ وَبَرَزْتَ

أَقَامَهَا اللَّهُ وَأَدَامَهَا

لَا حَوْلَ وَلَا قُوَّةَ إِلَّا بِاللَّهِ الْعَلِيِّ الْعَظِيمِ

Note

تَعْلِيمُ الْحَقِّ
Ta'leemul Haq

نماز کا طریقہ

The method of
performing

Salaah

according to
Sunnah
(Hanafee)

نماز پڑھنے کی پوری ترکیب

HOW SHOULD ONE PERFORM TWO RAKAAT NAMAAZ ACCORDING TO SUNNAH (Hanafi)

◆ BEFORE NAMAAZ

Ensure that clothes are Paak and make Wudhu. Stand respectfully on a Paak place facing the Qibla. Keep feet parallel about four fingers apart with toes pointing towards the Qibla and submit totally to Allah.

VERY IMPORTANT

For Males

No garment, jubba or trousers should be allowed to overlap the ankles. It is Makrooh Tahrimi to perform Namaaz whilst any garment is overlapping the ankles. This means that the Farz of Namaaz will be considered as performed but there is very little Sawaab or benefit in such Namaaz.

For Females

WOMEN also perform their Salaat in the same way, except for a few differences. WITHOUT HANDS BEING EXPOSED WOMEN should raise their hands to the height of their shoulders when saying Takbeer Tahrimi.

نماز کی نیت: جو نماز پڑھنا ہو اس کی نیت یعنی دل سے ارادہ کرے مثلاً فجر کی دو رکعت فرض نماز اللہ تعالیٰ کے لیے، قبلہ کی طرف منہ کر کے پڑھتا ہوں۔

امام کے پیچھے پڑھتا ہو تو یہ ارادہ بھی کرے کہ ”میں اس نماز کو اس امام کے پیچھے پڑھتا ہوں۔“ نیت زبان سے کرنا ضروری نہیں لیکن زبان سے بھی یہ الفاظ کہہ لے تو بہتر ہے۔ نیت: اردو، گجراتی، انگریزی کسی بھی زبان میں کر سکتا ہے۔

NIYYAH

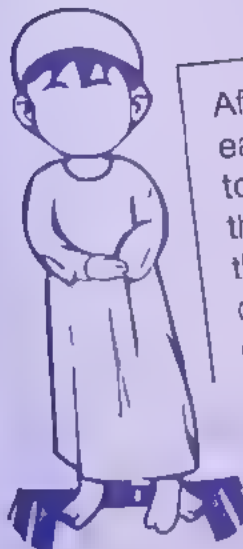
Make Niyyah (Intention) of whichever Namaaz one wishes to perform.

EXAMPLE

- ◆ I am performing two Rakaats Farz Namaaz of Fajr (to please Allah) facing towards the Qibla. **Allahu Akbar** اَللّٰهُ اَكْبَرُ
- ◆ When performing Namaaz led by an IMAAM, one should also make intention that: I am following this IMAAM.
- ◆ It is not necessary to make a verbal intention but it is better if one makes a VERBAL intention.
- ◆ NIYYAT can be made in any language: Arabic, Urdu, Gujarati, English, etc.

TAKBEER-E-TAHREEMA (To, say at the beginning):

اَللّٰهُ اَكْبَرُ
Allahu Akbar
اللہ سب سے بڑا ہے
Allah is the greatest of all



After making NIYYAH, lift the two hands upto the earlobes in such a manner that both palms face towards the Qibla. Then say ALLAHU AKBAR and fold them below the navel. Place the hands in such a way that the palm of the right hand is placed over the back of the left hand, with the right thumb and little finger gripping the wrist of the left hand and the three middle fingers of the right hand and the three middle fingers of the left hand kept straight and together. While in Qiyaam (standing posture) the eyes should be fixed to the spot where the forehead will rest in Sajda.



WOMEN DO NOT RAISE HANDS
HIGHER THAN SHOULDERS AND
PLACE ARMS ON THE CHEST.

Place the right hand over the back
of the left hand above the breast
and do not hold it like the MALE.



NOW READ THE THANAA

سُبْحَانَكَ اللَّهُمَّ، وَبِحَمْدِكَ

Subhaana-kallaahumma Wa Bi-Hamdika
All Glory is to your O Allah! And praise is to You;

اے اللہ ہم تیری پاکیزگی کا اقرار کرتے ہیں، اور تیری تعریف کرتے ہیں

وَتَبَارَكَ اسْمُكَ، وَتَعَالَى جَدُّكَ

Wa tabaara-kasmuka wa ta'aala Jadduka
blessed is Your name and Exalted is Your majesty

اور تیرا نام بہت برکت والا ہے اور تیری بزرگی بہت برتر ہے

وَلَا إِلَهَ غَيْرُكَ

Wa Laa-ilaaha Ghayruka
and there is none worthy of worship besides You.

اور تیرے سوا کوئی عبادت کے لائق نہیں

THEN READ: TA'AWWUZ

أَعُوذُ بِاللّٰهِ مِنَ الشَّيْطَانِ الرَّجِيمِ

A'u-dhu Billaahi Minash-shaitaanir Rajeem
I seek refuge in Allah from the rejected Satan

میں اللہ کی پناہ لیتا ہوں شیطان مردود سے

AND TASMIYAH

بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ الرَّحْمٰنِ الرَّحِيمِ

Bismillaahir Rahmaanir Raheem

In the name of Allah, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful

اللہ کے نام سے شروع کرتا ہوں جو بڑا مہربان نہایت رحم والا ہے۔

FIRST RAK'AH

◆ SURATUL FAATIHA AND ADDITIONAL SURAH.

Recite Suratul Faatiha and after WALAD-DHALLEEN say AAMEEN (softly), then recite BISMILLAHIR RAHMAANIR RAHEEM and any Surah thereafter. It is necessary that a minimum of three short Aayahs or one long Aayah be read in proper sequence as in the Quraan.

SURAH AL-FAATIHA

الْحَمْدُ لِلّٰهِ رَبِّ الْعَالَمِينَ ۝

Alhamdu Lillaahi Rabbil 'Aalameen

All praises is due to Allah Lord of the worlds

سب تعریف اللہ کے لیے ہے جو مہربانوں کا پروردگار ہے

الرَّحْمٰنِ الرَّحِيمِ ۝

Ar Rahmaanir Raheem

The Beneficent, the Merciful

مہربان ہے رحم والا ہے

مَلِكِ يَوْمِ الدِّينِ ۝

Maaliki yaumid deen
Master of the Day of Judgement
قیامت کے دن کا مالک ہے

إِيَّاكَ نَعْبُدُ وَإِيَّاكَ نَسْتَعِينُ ۝

Iyyaaka na' budo, wa iyyaaka nasta'een
You alone we Worship, And You alone we ask for help
ہم تیری ہی عبادت کرتے ہیں اور تجھی سے مدد مانگتے ہیں

اهْدِنَا الصِّرَاطَ الْمُسْتَقِيمَ ۝

Ihdinas-siraatal Mustaqeem
Show us the right path
ہم کو سیدھا راستہ چلا

صِرَاطَ الَّذِينَ أَنْعَمْتَ عَلَيْهِمْ ۝

Siraatal Lazeena an 'amta 'alaihim
The path of those whom you have favoured
ان لوگوں کا راستہ جن پر تو نے انعام کیا

غَيْرِ الْمَغْضُوبِ عَلَيْهِمْ وَلَا الضَّالِّينَ ۝

Ghairil Maghdoobi 'alaihim walad-daaaleen.
Not the path of those who earn Your anger
Nor (the Path) of those who go astray

نہ ان لوگوں کا (راستہ) جو تیرے غضب میں مبتلا ہوئے اور نہ گمراہوں کا

(Ameen)

SURAH

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

قُلْ أَعُوذُ بِرَبِّ الْفَلَقِ ۝ مِنْ شَرِّ مَا خَلَقَ ۝ وَمِنْ شَرِّ غَاسِقٍ إِذَا وَقَبَ ۝
وَمِنْ شَرِّ النَّفَّاثَاتِ فِي الْعُقَدِ ۝ وَمِنْ شَرِّ حَاسِدٍ إِذَا حَسَدَ ۝

Say: "I seek refuge with the Lord of the rising day; from the evil of all that He created; from the evil of night's darkness when it spreads around; from the evil of the women who blow on knots; and from the evil of the envier when he envies."

Saying "Allahu Akbar" go in RUKU

سُبْحَانَ رَبِّيَ الْعَظِيمِ

Subhaana Rabbiyal 'Azeem
How Glorious is my Lord the Great.
میں پاکی بیان کرتا ہوں اپنے پروردگار بزرگ کی



The EYES should be fixed onto the FEET.



WOMEN

MEN

- ◆ In RUKU hold both the KNEES with the fingers APART.
- ◆ Ensure that the ARMS do not touch the BODY.
- ◆ Keep the BACK straight, while the HEAD should neither be LOWERED nor RAISED.
- ◆ In RUKU recite softly at least THREE or FIVE times.

- ◆ When making RUKU a WOMAN should only BEND over sufficiently so that her HANDS reach her KNEES.
- ◆ The HANDS should be placed on the KNEES, with the FINGERS kept together.
- ◆ In RUKU the ELBOWS should TOUCH the sides of the BODY and the FEET kept TOGETHER.

TASMEE : To say 'Sami Allahu Leman Hamedah.

QAWMAH : To stand up after RUKU.

Now stand up straight and whilst coming up say: **TASMEE**

سَمِعَ اللَّهُ لِمَنْ حَمِدَهُ

Sami 'Allaahu Liman Hamidah

Allah has listened to him who has praised Him.

اللہ نے اس بندے کی (بات) سن لی جس نے اس کی تعریف کی

Then in the upright position say: **TAHMID**

رَبَّنَا لَكَ الْحَمْدُ

Rabbana Lakal Hamd

O Our Lord! Praise be to You.

اے ہمارے پروردگار تیرے ہی واسطے تمام تعریف ہے۔



- ◆ If one does NOT stand erect after RUKU and merely lifts ones head and goes into Sajdah then the NAMAAZ will NOT be VALID, and it will be NECESSARY to repeat the NAMAAZ.

FIRST SAJDHAH

Now saying "**ALLAHU AKBAR**" and placing both hands on the knees, go into Sajda. (On completing the Takbeer one should have reached the position of Sajdah). When going into Sajdah first place the **KNEES** on the ground, then the **HANDS**, then the **NOSE** and then the **FOREHEAD**. The **FACE** should rest between the two **HANDS** with **FINGERS** pointing towards the Qiblah. When in Sajdah the **FEET** should be upright with the **TOES** pointing towards the Qibla. The **ARMS** should not touch the sides of the **BODY** nor the ground. The **STOMACH** should be away from the **THIGHS**.



سُبْحَانَ رَبِّيَ الْأَعْلَى

Subhaana Rabbiyal A'ala

All Glory be to my Lord, the Most High.

میں پاکی بیان کرتا ہوں اپنے پروردگار برتر کی۔

If there is a valid reason the forehead could be kept off the ground, otherwise the Sajdah will not be valid.

When in Sajdah the feet should not be lifted from the ground. If they are lifted for duration more than three "SUBHANALLAH" the Namaaz will be void.

- ♦ **WOMEN:** In Sajdah the upper part of the leg (the thigh) should not be upright but in as flat a position as possible, with the feet spread towards the right. While in Sajdah the stomach and thighs must be kept together. The forearms should be put flat on the ground in Sajdah.

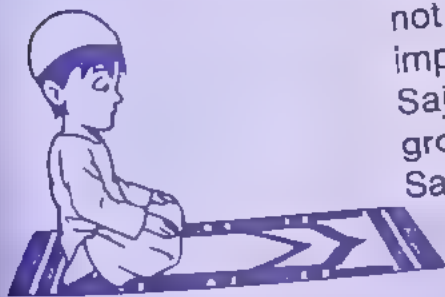
Women must not raise their VOICE when reciting TASBEEH.

سُبْحَانَ رَبِّيَ الْأَعْلَى
Subhaana Rabbil A'ala



JALSA (To sit between two Sajdahs)

Saying **ALLAHU AKBAR** sit up straight, do not sit with the back crooked or stooped. It is important to sit up and pause after the first Sajdah, merely lifting the head from the ground without sitting up before the second Sajdah will nullify the Namaaz.



- ♦ **MEN:** Sit resting the BACK on the LEFT LEG and having the RIGHT LEG raised, the TOES facing the QIBLA.
- ♦ **WOMEN:** NOTE that a GIRL does not sit on her LEFT LEG.



SECOND SAJDHAH

The second Sajdah is performed as the first one, i.e. going into Sajdah saying **ALLAHU AKBAR** and reading **SUBHANA RABBIYAL AA'LAA** softly at least three times.

One Rak'ah is now complete

SECOND RAK'AH

Saying ALLAHU AKBAR stand up for the second Qiyaam. On getting up from the Sajdah first lift the FOREHEAD, then the NOSE and then the KNEES. Ensure that the HANDS are on the KNEES and not on the ground for support, except for a valid reason. Saying BISMILLAHIR RAHMANIR RAHEEM recite SURATUL FAATIHA and a Surah and COMPLETE THE SECOND RAK'AH IN THE SAME MANNER AS THE FIRST ONE.

FIRST QAIDAH

After completing the Second Sajdah of the second Rak'aah saying ALLAHU AKBAR sit up for Qa'idah.

The method of sitting is placing the LEFT FOOT flat on the ground and sitting on it, with the RIGHT FOOT upright and its TOES facing towards the Qibla. The HANDS must be placed on the THIGHS with the tips of the FINGERS near the KNEES. It is important that the fingers are kept close together and that they face the Qiblah and not towards the ground. The EYES should be fixed on the LAP.



اللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ

Allahu Akbar

Allah is the greatest of all

اللہ سب سے بڑا ہے۔

◆ Then read the

TASHAHHUD تشہد

التَّحِيَّاتُ لِلَّهِ وَالصَّلَوَاتُ وَالطَّيِّبَاتُ

At-tahiyyaatu lillaahi wassalawaatu wat-Tayyibaatu
All reverence, all worship, all sanctity are due to Allah,

تمام زبان کی عبادتیں اللہ کے لیے ہیں اور بدنی عبادتیں اور مالی عبادتیں بھی

السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكَ أَيُّهَا النَّبِيُّ وَرَحْمَةُ اللَّهِ وَبَرَكَاتُهُ

Assalaamu 'alaika ayyuhan-nabiyyu Wa Rahmatullaahi wa Barakaatuhu
Peace be on you, O Prophet, and Mercy of Allah and His blessings.

سلام ہو تم پر اے نبی اور اللہ کی رحمت اور اس کی برکتیں

اَلسَّلَامُ عَلَيْنَا وَ عَلَىٰ عِبَادِ اللّٰهِ الصّٰلِحِيْنَ.

Assalaamu 'alainaa wa 'alaa 'ibaadil-laahis-saaliheen
Peace be on us and those who are righteous servants of Allah.

سلامتی ہو ہم پر اور اللہ کے نیک بندوں پر

أَشْهَدُ أَنْ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ

Ash-hadu Allaa ilaaha illallaahu
I bear witness that none is worthy of worship besides Allah
میں گواہی دیتا ہوں کہ اللہ کے سوا کوئی معبود نہیں

وَأَشْهَدُ أَنَّ مُحَمَّدًا عَبْدُهُ وَرَسُولُهُ.

Wa ash-hadu anna Muhammadan 'abduhu wa Rasooluh
And I bear witness that Muhammad (ﷺ) is His devotee and messenger.
اور میں گواہی دیتا ہوں کہ حضرت محمد (ﷺ) اس کے بندے اور اس کے پیغمبر ہیں

- On reaching the KALIMA أَشْهَدُ أَنْ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ Ashhadu Allaa ilaaha form a circle with the thumb and middle finger and lift the index finger of the right hand



and at اَللّٰهُ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ drop it onto the thigh.
The circle should be maintained to the end.



THIRD AND FOURTH RAK'AHs

If one wishes to perform four Rak'ahs one should not read anything more than the TASHAHHUD, but saying ALLAHU AKBAR stand up and perform the remaining two Rak'ahs. No other Surah should be read after SURATUL FATIHA in the THIRD and FOURTH Rak'ahs of any FARZ Namaaz, but it is WAAJIB to do so in any SUNNAT or NAFL Namaaz.

SECOND QAIDAH

In the second Qai'dah after the Tashahhud read DUROODE IBRAHIM:

DUROOD IBRAHIM

اَللّٰهُمَّ صَلِّ عَلٰی مُحَمَّدٍ وَعَلٰی اٰلِ مُحَمَّدٍ

Allaahumma Salli 'ala Muhammadin wa 'alaa aali Muhammadin
O Allah, Shower Your Mercy Upon Muhammad (ﷺ) and the followers of Muhammad (ﷺ)
الہی حضرت محمد (ﷺ) پر اور حضرت محمد (ﷺ) کی آل پر رحمت بھیج

کَمَا صَلَّيْتَ عَلٰی اِبْرٰهِيْمَ وَعَلٰی اٰلِ اِبْرٰهِيْمَ

Kamaa sallayta 'alaa Ibraaheema wa 'alaa aali Ibraaheema
As You Showered Your Mercy Upon Ibraheem (ﷺ) and the followers of Ibraheem (ﷺ).
جس طرح تُو نے رحمت بھیجی حضرت ابراہیم (ﷺ) پر اور حضرت ابراہیم (ﷺ) کی آل پر

اِنَّكَ حَمِيْدٌ مَّجِيْدٌ

Innaka Hameedum Majeed
Behold. You are praiseworthy, Glorious.
بے شک تو تعریف کیا گیا ہے بزرگ ہے۔

اَللّٰهُمَّ بَارِكْ عَلٰی مُحَمَّدٍ وَعَلٰی اٰلِ مُحَمَّدٍ

Allaahumma baarik 'alaa Muhammadin Wa 'alaa aali Muhammadin
O Allah, Shower Your blessings Upon Muhammad (ﷺ) and the followers of Muhammad (ﷺ)
الہی برکت دے حضرت محمد (ﷺ) کو اور حضرت محمد (ﷺ) کی آل کو

کَمَا بَارَكْتَ عَلٰی اِبْرٰهِيْمَ وَعَلٰی اٰلِ اِبْرٰهِيْمَ

Kamaa baarakta 'alaa Ibraaheema wa 'alaa aali Ibraaheema
As You Showered Your blessings Upon Ibraheem (ﷺ) and the followers of Ibraheem (ﷺ)
جس طرح تُو نے برکت دی حضرت ابراہیم (ﷺ) کو اور حضرت ابراہیم (ﷺ) کی آل کو

اِنَّكَ حَمِيْدٌ مَّجِيْدٌ

Innaka Hameedum Majeed
Behold. You are praiseworthy, Glorious.
بے شک تو تعریف کیا گیا ہے بزرگ ہے

DU'A AFTER DUROOD

- ◆ After the Durood recite this Du'a:

اَللّٰهُمَّ اِنِّیْ ظَلَمْتُ نَفْسِیْ ظُلْمًا کَثِیْرًا

Allaa-humma innee zalamtu nafsee Zulman Katheeran,

O! Allah! I have been extremely unjust to myself,

اے اللہ میں نے اپنے نفس پر بہت ظلم کیا ہے

وَ اِنَّهٗ لَا یَغْفِرُ الذُّنُوْبَ اِلَّا اَنْتَ فَاعْفِرْ لِیْ

wa innahu la-yaghfi ruz-zunuba illa-anta faghfirlee

and none grants forgiveness against sins but You; therefore, forgive me,

اور اس میں شک نہیں کہ سوائے تیرے اور کوئی گناہوں کو بخش نہیں سکتا پس تو اپنی

مَغْفِرَةً مِّنْ عِنْدِكَ وَارْحَمْنِیْ

maghfiratam min 'indika, war-hamnee

will forgiveness that comes from You, and have Mercy upon me.

طرف سے خاص بخشش سے مجھ کو بخش دے اور مجھ پر رحم فرمادے

اِنَّكَ اَنْتَ الْغَفُوْرُ الرَّحِیْمُ

innaka antal ghafurur raheem

Verily You are the Forgiving, the Merciful

بے شک تو ہی بخشنے والا نہایت رحم والا ہے۔

SALAAM

Complete the Namaaz by turning the face to the right saying:

then
LEFT

اَلسَّلَامُ عَلَیْكُمْ وَرَحْمَةُ اللّٰهِ

Assalaamu 'alaikum wa rahmatullaah

Peace be on you and Allah's blessings

سلام ہو تم پر اور اللہ کی رحمت



- ◆ When making Salaam one should make Intention of greeting the Angels,
- ◆ When making Salaam the eyes should be fixed onto the respective shoulders.

COMPLETION OF NAMAAZ

- ◆ On completing the Namaaz one should recite ASTAGHFIRULLAH thrice.

أَسْتَغْفِرُ اللَّهَ

Astaghfirullaah

I ask Allah to forgive me

میں اللہ سے اپنے گناہوں کی معافی مانگتا ہوں۔

- ◆ Then one should raise both hands to the level of the chest and make Du'aa to ALLAH TA'ALA:

1

اَللّٰهُمَّ اَنْتَ السَّلَامُ وَمِنْكَ السَّلَامُ

Allaahumma Antas-Salaamu wa minkas-salaam

O Allah, You are the Peace, and from You comes the peace,

اے اللہ تو ہی سلامتی دینے والا ہے اور تیری طرف سے سلامتی (مل سکتی) ہے

تَبَارَكْتَ يَا ذَا الْجَلَالِ وَالْاِكْرَامِ

Tabaarakta yaa Dhal-Jalaali wal-ikraam.

You are Blessed, O the Sublime and the Honourable One

بہت برکت والا ہے تو اے عظمت اور بزرگی والے۔

2

اَللّٰهُمَّ اَعِنَّا عَلَى ذِكْرِكَ وَشُكْرِكَ وَحُسْنِ عِبَادَتِكَ

Allaahumma a'innaa 'alaa zikrika wa shukrika wa husni 'ibaadatika

O Allah, assist me in remembering You, and in being grateful to You, and performing Your worship in an excellent manner

اے اللہ تیرے ذکر اور شکر اور اچھی طرح سے تیری عبادت کرنے پر ہماری مدد فرما۔

3

رَبَّنَا تَقَبَّلْ مِنَّا إِنَّكَ أَنْتَ السَّمِيعُ الْعَلِيمُ

Lord, accept this service from us; You are All-Hearing and All-Knowing.
اے ہمارے رب ہم سے یہ خدمت قبول فرمائے، تو سب کی سنے اور سب کچھ جاننے والا ہے۔

وَتُبَّ عَلَيْنَا إِنَّكَ أَنْتَ التَّوَّابُ الرَّحِيمُ

and forbear our shortcomings: You are Forgiving and Merciful.
اور ہماری کوتاہیوں سے درگزر فرما، تو بڑا معاف کرنے والا اور رحم فرمانے والا ہے۔

4

اَللّٰهُمَّ رَبَّنَا اٰتِنَا فِي الدُّنْيَا حَسَنَةً وَفِي الْاٰخِرَةِ حَسَنَةً
وَقِنَا عَذَابَ النَّارِ

O Allah, Our Lord, give us what is good in this world and also what is
good in the Hereafter and save us from the torment of Fire.
اے اللہ! اے ہمارے رب! ہمیں دنیا میں بھی بھلائی دے اور آخرت میں بھی بھلائی، اور آگ کے عذاب سے ہمیں بچا۔

5

سُبْحَنَ رَبِّكَ رَبِّ الْعِزَّةِ عَمَّا يَصِفُونَ ۖ وَسَلَامٌ عَلَى الْمُرْسَلِينَ ۖ
وَالْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ رَبِّ الْعَالَمِينَ ۝

Exalted be your Lord, the Lord of Glory, above what they attribute to Him,
and peace be upon the Messengers, and all praise be to Allah,
the Lord of the Universe.

پاک ہے تیرا رب، عزت کا مالک، ان تمام باتوں سے جو یہ لوگ بناتے ہیں۔ اور سلام ہے رسولوں پر
اور ساری تعریف اللہ رب العالمین ہی کے لیے ہے۔

اَللّٰهُمَّ اَعِزَّنَا عَلٰى

wa husni "ibad"
being grateful to the
cellent manner
اے اللہ تیرے ذکر اور

AAYATUL KURSI

- ◆ This Aayah should be memorised and read once after every Farz Nammaz.

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

اللَّهُ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا هُوَ ۖ الْحَيُّ الْقَيُّومُ ۚ لَا تَأْخُذُهُ سِنَّةٌ وَلَا نَوْمٌ ۚ لَهُ مَا فِي السَّمَوَاتِ وَمَا فِي الْأَرْضِ ۚ مَنْ ذَا الَّذِي يَشْفَعُ عِنْدَهُ إِلَّا بِإِذْنِهِ ۚ يَعْلَمُ مَا بَيْنَ أَيْدِيهِمْ وَمَا خَلْفَهُمْ ۚ وَلَا يُحِيطُونَ بِشَيْءٍ مِّنْ عِلْمِهِ إِلَّا بِمَا شَاءَ ۚ وَسِعَ كُرْسِيُّهُ السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضَ ۚ وَلَا يَئُودُهُ حِفْظُهُمَا ۚ وَهُوَ الْعَلِيُّ الْعَظِيمُ ۝

Translation: Allah: the Everlasting, the Sustainer of the whole Universe; there is no God but He. He does neither slumber nor sleep. Whatsoever is in the heavens and in the earth is His. Who is there that can intercede with Him except by His own permission? He knows what is before the people and also what is hidden from them. And they cannot comprehend anything of His knowledge save whatever He Himself pleases to reveal. His Kingdom spreads over the heavens and the earth and the guarding of these does not weary Him. He alone is the Supreme and the Exalted.

ترجمہ: اللہ، وہ زندہ جاوید ہستی، جو تمام کائنات کو سنبھالے ہوئے ہے، اُس کے سوا کوئی خدا نہیں ہے۔ وہ نہ سوتا ہے اور نہ اُسے اُدگ لگتی ہے۔ زمین اور آسمانوں میں جو کچھ ہے، اُسی کا ہے کون ہے جو اُس کی جناب میں اُس کی اجازت کے بغیر سفارش کر سکے؟ جو کچھ بندوں کے سامنے ہے اُسے بھی وہ جانتا ہے اور جو کچھ اُن سے اوجھل ہے، اُس سے بھی وہ واقف ہے اور اس کی معلومات میں سے کوئی چیز ان کی گرفتِ ادراک میں نہیں آسکتی الا یہ کہ کسی چیز کا علم وہ خود ہی اُن کو دینا چاہے۔ اُس کی حکومت آسمانوں اور زمین پر پھائی ہوئی ہے اور اُن کی نگہبانی اس کے لیے کوئی تھکائیے والا کام نہیں ہے۔ بس وہی ایک بزرگ و برتر ذات ہے۔

THREE RAKAATS WITR-WAJIB

This three-Rak'ah Namaaz is offered during the ESHA Namaaz.

First the two Rak'ahs are performed and after completing the TASHAHHUD stand up in the original position with the arms folded.

After reciting "BISMILLAH" and "ALHAMDULILLAHAH" and a SURAH, say "ALLAHU AKBAR" raising the hands upto the ears and folding them below the navel.

Thereafter recite the DU'A QUNOOT (softly).



DUA-E-QUNOOT

اَللّٰهُمَّ اِنَّا نَسْتَغِيْثُكَ وَنَسْتَغْفِرُكَ، وَتَوْمِنُ بِكَ وَنَتَوَكَّلُ
عَلَيْكَ، وَنُثْنِيْ عَلَيْكَ الْخَيْرَ، وَنَشْكُرُكَ وَلَا نَكْفُرُكَ،
وَنُحْلِعُ وَنَتْرُكُ مَنْ يَفْجُرُكَ، اَللّٰهُمَّ اِيَّاكَ نَعْبُدُ وَلَكَ
نُصَلِّيْ وَنَسْجُدُ وَآلِيْكَ نَسْعِيْ وَنَحْفِدُ، وَنَرْجُو رَحْمَتَكَ،
وَنَخْشَى عَذَابَكَ اِنَّ عَذَابَكَ بِالْكَفَّارِ مُلْحِقٌ ۝

Allahumma inna nasta-eenuka, wa nastaghfiruka, wa nu'minu-bika, wa natawakkalu alaika, wa nusni alaikal khair, wa nasnukuruka, wa la nakfuruka, wa naqlaoo, wa natruku mayn-yafjuruka, Allahumma iyyaaka-na abudu, wa laka nusalli, wa nasjudu, wa ilaika nas-aa, wa nahfidu, wa narju rahmataka, wa nakhsha azaabaka, inna azaabaka bil kuffari mulhiq.

Translation: O Allah: we beseech Your help, and we ask Your pardon, and believe in You, and we put our trust in You, and we praise You in the best manner, And we thank You, and we are not ungrateful to You, And we cast off, and leave one who disobeys You. O Allah : You alone we serve, and to You do we pray, and we prostrate, and to You do we flee, and we are quick, and we hope for Your mercy, and we fear Your punishment, No doubt Your punishment overtakes the unbelievers.

- ◆ One who does not know the Dua e Qunoot may recite:

اَللّٰهُمَّ رَبَّنَا اٰتِنَا فِي الدُّنْيَا حَسَنَةً وَفِي الْاٰخِرَةِ حَسَنَةً
وَقِنَا عَذَابَ النَّارِ

Allahumma Rabbanaa aatinaa lid-dunyaa hasanatan wa feel
aakhirati hasanatan wa qinaa 'adhaaban naar

O Allah, Our Lord, give us what is good in this world and also what is
good in the Hereafter and save us from the torment of Fire.

اے اللہ! اے ہمارے رب! ہمیں دنیا میں بھی بھلائی دے اور آخرت میں بھی بھلائی، اور آگ کے عذاب سے ہمیں بچا۔

- ◆ or Say thrice: اَللّٰهُمَّ اغْفِرْ لِيْ Allaahummagh-firlee

- ◆ or Say thrice: يَا رَبِّ Yaa Rabbi

Go into RUKU, and then complete
the NAMAAZ in the usual manner.



تَعْلِيمُ الْحَقِّ
Ta'leemul Haq

نماز کی شرطوں
کا بیان

(Sharaa-it)
Conditions
and Rules of
Salaah
according to
Sunnah
(Hanafee)

CONDITIONS AND RULES OF

NAMAAZ

According to Sunnah (HANAFI)

INTRODUCTION

نماز خدا تعالیٰ کی عبادت اور بندگی کرنے کا ایک خاص طریقہ ہے جو خدا تعالیٰ نے قرآن مجید میں اور حضرت رسول مقبول ﷺ نے حدیثوں میں مسلمانوں کو سکھایا ہے۔

نماز پڑھنے سے پہلے آٹھ چیزوں کی ضرورت ہے جن کے بغیر نماز نہیں ہوتی۔

NAMAAZ is a special type of prayer that has been taught by ALLAH and the HOLY PROPHET MUHAMMAD (ﷺ).

EIGHT conditions are to be observed before one performs Namaaz. Without them Namaaz cannot be performed.

These EIGHT conditions are called SHARAA'IT.

8 CONDITIONS THAT MUST BE OBSERVED BEFORE ONE PERFORMS SALAAH

نماز شروع کرنے سے پہلے
۸ چیزیں ضروری ہیں

- ① وضو نہ ہو تو وضو کرے
- ② نہانے کی ضرورت ہو تو غسل کرے
- ③ بدن یا کپڑے پر کوئی ناپاکی لگی ہو تو اس کو پاک کرے
- ④ Taharat (cleanliness) of body and dress.
- ⑤ جس جگہ نماز پڑھنا ہو وہ بھی پاک چاہیے
- ⑥ قبلہ کی طرف منہ کرے
- ⑦ Taharat (cleanliness) of place.
- ⑧ Facing towards the QIBLAH.
- ⑨ سر چھپا دے
- ⑩ Covering of Satr (private parts).
- ⑪ نیت کرے
- ⑫ Niyyat (intention) for Salaah.
- ⑬ Performing Salaat at the Prescribed times.
- ⑭ نماز ادا کرنے کے لیے جو وقت مقرر کیا ہے اس سے پہلے نہ پڑھے

◆ اگر اس میں سے ایک چیز بھی چھوٹ جاوے گی تو نماز نہ ہوگی۔ If any one of these conditions is omitted, Salaat will not be accepted.

◆ N.B. A MALE's SATR is from the NAVEL to the KNEE (including knee).

◆ And a FEMALE'S SATR is her ENTIRE BODY except her FACE and HANDS to the WRIST.

◆ TAHARAH (cleanliness) means one's body should be free from all NAJAASAT. (Filth and Impurities).

There are TWO TYPES of NAJAASAT. One HAQEEQI, the other HUKMI.

NAJAASATE HAQEEQI is the NAJAASAT which can be seen (External impurity) eg. urine, blood, stool and wine.

NAJAASATE HUKMI is that NAJAASAT (impurity and filth) which cannot be seen, eg.

(a) HADATH (b) JANABAH.

HADATH: to be without WUDHU.

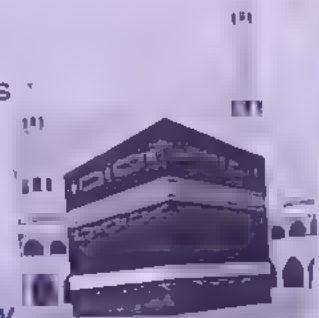
JANABAH: state of a person on whom GHUSL or bath has become COMPULSORY.

It is necessary that one's body should be free from both types of NAJAASAT before performing Namaaz.

◆ One should face towards the KA'BAH SHARIF when performing Namaaz.

We are ordered to face KA'BAH SHARIF because the KA'BAH is the House of Allah, which is in the city of MECCA. One must always keep one's chest towards the KA'BAH while performing Namaaz..

The direction of the HOLY KA'BAH SHARIF is called the QIBLAH.



Namaaz is COMPULSORY FIVE TIMES daily

NAMAAZ CHART

Name of NAMAAZ	Sunnat	Fardh	Sunnat	Nafl	Witr	Nafl	Total
Fajr فجر	2*	2	-	-	-	-	4
Zuhr ظہر	4*	4	2*	2	-	-	12
Asr عصر	4	4	-	-	-	-	8
Maghrib مغرب	-	3	2*	2	-	-	7
Isha عشاء	4	4	2*	2	3**	2	17
JUMUAH جمعہ	4*	2	4*+2*	-	-	2	14
There is no Zohar Salaat after Friday (Jumuah) Salaat.							
**Wajib *Muakkadah							

EID عیدین	2 Rak'aats Wajib with six extra TAKBEERS.	No Azan or Iqaama for Eidul-Fitr or Eidul-Adha Salaat. No Nafl Salaat before and after Eid Salaat.
JANAHA جنازہ JANAHA	4 Takbeers only	No Azan, Iqaama or Rak'aats

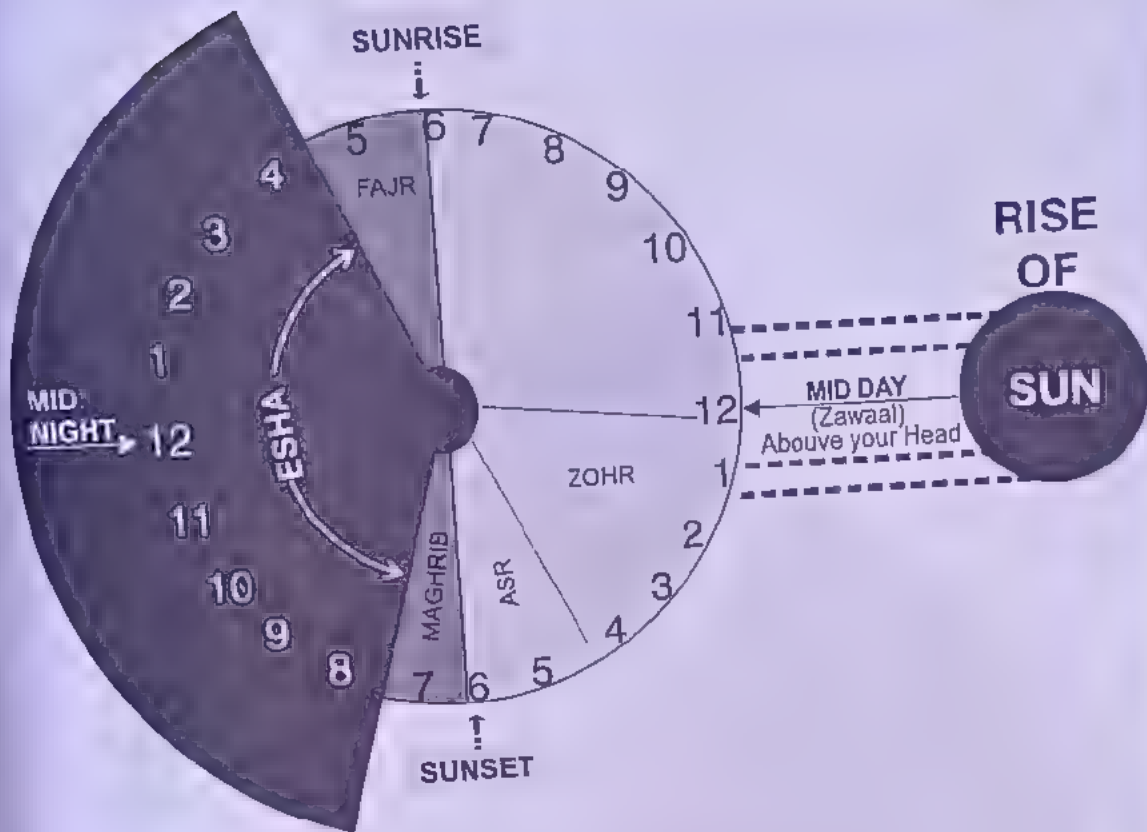
- ◆ No Nafl Salaat to be performed after the Farz of the FAJR up to about 10-15 minuts after sunrise.
- ◆ No Salaat to be performed at Zawaal (when the sun has reached the highest point).
- ◆ No Nafl Salaat to be performed between ASR and MAGHRIB except the Qaza and Janaaza.

TARAWIH 20 RAKAATS

Taraawih Namaaz is Sunnat-E-Muakkada for MEN and WOMEN during the month of RAMADAAN only.

The twenty Raka'ats of Taraawih Namaaz are performed after the FARZ and SUNNAT of ESHA Namaaz The 20 raka'ats with 10 Salaams are masnoon. ie. One should make niyyat for two raka'ats of Taraawih each time, and WITR Namaaz there after.

TIMES OF NAMAAZ VARY ACCORDING TO SEASON



FAJR

Q: When does the time for Fajr begin and when does it end?

A: From SUBHA SADIQ (Early Dawn) up to a little before SUNRISE.

ZOHAR

Q: When does the time for Zohar begin and when does it end?

A: From after Zawaal (Past Noon) up to the time that the shadow of any object becomes twice the length of the object plus the original shadow that was there at MID-DAY (ZAWAAL).

ASR

Q: When does the time for Asr begin and when does it end?

A: It begins when Zohar time finishes and ends at a little before SUNSET. To delay the Asr Namaaz until the colour of the sun has turned PALE (yellow) is MAKRUH.

MAGHRIB

Q: What is the time for Magrib Namaaz?

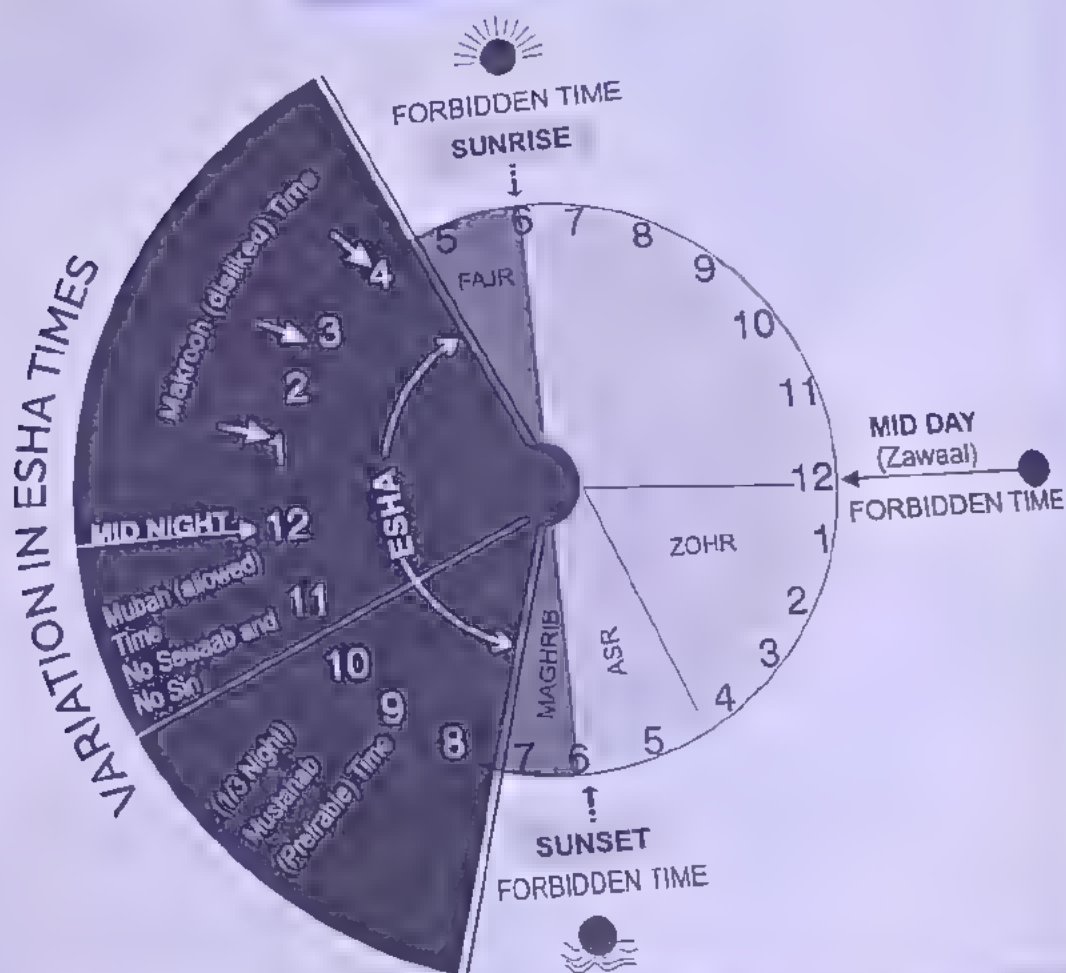
A: From SUNSET up to the time the REDNESS fades on the horizon.

ISHA

Q: When does Esha time begin?

A: Esha time begins after the REDNESS on the horizon disappears (about an hour and half after sunset) and lasts upto a little before SUBHA SADIQ (dawn). It is MUSTAHAB to read Esha Namaaz before one third of the night has passed and It is MAKROOH to delay Esha Namaaz until after MID-NIGHT.






FORBIDDEN TIMES FOR NAMAAZ



Note: Namaz times differ according to places and countries. Thus contact your local ULAMA for details and further clarification regarding Namaaz times.

FARZ COMPULSORY ACTS IN NAMAAZ

6 THERE ARE SIX FARZ IN NAMAAZ نماز کے اندر چھ چیزیں فرض ہیں

- ① TAKBEERE TAHREEMA. تکبیر تحریمہ کہنا
اللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ
- ② QIYAAM (standing) position. قیام (کھڑا ہونا)

- ③ QIRAAT (Recitation of at least three aayats or one long aayat of the QURAAN). قرأت (یعنی قرآن مجید پڑھنا)

- ④ RUKU (to bow down). رکوع کرنا

- ⑤ Both the SAJDAHS (to prostrate). دونوں سجدے کرنا

- ⑥ QAA'DAH AKHEERA (To sit so long at the end of the last Rakaat that one can read the TASHAH'HUD). قعدہ اخیرہ یعنی نماز کے اخیر میں التحیات پڑھنے کی مقدار بیٹھنا۔


WAAJIB NECESSARY ACTS IN NAMAAZ

Q. What does WAAJIBAAT-E-NAMAAZ mean?

A. WAAJIBAAT are those items that are necessary to complete the Namaaz. If one misses any one of them unknowingly, this mistake can be compensated by performing SAJDASAHW (Sajda done for mistakes made unknowingly).

- ◆ If one does not perform SAJDA SAHW or if one misses a WAAJIB knowingly, it is necessary to perform that Namaaz all over again.

THERE ARE FOURTEEN WAAJIBAAT IN NAMAAZ

14

- ① Fixing the first two Rakaats of the FARZ Namaaz for QIRAAT.
- ② It is Waajib to recite Surah Faatiha in all the Rakaat of every Namaaz. However, in the third and fourth Rakaat of any Farz Namaaz, it is Sunnat and not Waajib.
- ③ To recite a Surah or a lengthy Aayat or three small Aayats after SURAH-E-FAATIHA in the first two Rakaats of FARZ Namaaz and in all the Rakaats of WAAJIB, SUNNAT and NAFIL Namaaz.
- ④ To read SURAH FATIHA before any other Surah or Aayat.
- ⑤ To maintain order between QIRAAT, RUKU, SAJDA and RAKAAT.
- ⑥ QAUMA (Standing up erect after RUKU).
- ⑦ JALSA (Sitting between the two SAJDAS).
- ⑧ TA'DEELE ARKAAN, i.e. performing RUKU, SAJDA, etc. with contentment and in a good way.
- ⑨ QAADAH-OOLAA or sitting to the extent of saying TASHAHHUD after two Rakaats in Namaaz of three or four Rakaats.
- ⑩ To read TASHAHHUD in the two QA'DAAS.
- ⑪ To recite QIRAAT aloud in Fajr, Maghrib, Esha, Jumuah, Eidain and Taraweeh Salaat in Ramadaan by the Imam. The Imam should recite Zuhr and Asr Namaaz silently.
- ⑫ To end the Namaaz by saying SALAAM.
- ⑬ To say TAKBEER (Allahu-Akbar) for QUNOOT in Witr Namaaz and also recite DUA-E-QUNOOT.
- ⑭ To say six additional TAKBEERS in both Eid Namaaz.

واجبات نماز کا بیان

سوال۔ واجبات نماز سے کیا مراد ہے؟

جواب۔ واجبات نماز ان چیزوں کو کہتے ہیں جن کا نماز میں ادا کرنا ضروری ہے۔ اگر ان میں سے کوئی چیز بھولے سے چھوٹ جائے تو سجدہ ہو کر لینے سے نماز درست ہو جاتی ہے اور بھولے سے چھوٹنے کے بعد سجدہ ہو نہ کیا جائے یا قصداً کوئی چیز چھوڑ دی جائے تو نماز کا لوٹنا واجب ہوتا ہے۔

سوال۔ واجبات نماز کتنے ہیں؟

جواب۔ واجبات نماز چودہ ہیں

واجبات نماز چودہ ہیں



- ① فرض نمازوں کی پہلی دو رکعتوں کو قرأت کے لئے مقتر کرنا
- ② فرض نمازوں کی تیسری اور چوتھی رکعت کے علاوہ تمام نمازوں کی ہر رکعت میں سورہ فاتحہ پڑھنا۔
- ③ فرض نمازوں کی پہلی دو رکعتوں میں اور واجب اور سنت اور نفل نمازوں کی تمام رکعتوں میں سورہ فاتحہ کے بعد کوئی سورہ یا بڑی ایک آیت یا چھوٹی تین آیتیں پڑھنا
- ④ سورہ فاتحہ کو سورہ سے پہلے پڑھنا
- ⑤ قرأت اور رکوع میں اور سجدوں اور رکعتوں میں ترتیب قائم رکھنا
- ⑥ قومہ کرنا یعنی رکوع سے اٹھ کر سیدھا کھڑا ہونا
- ⑦ جلسہ یعنی دونوں سجدوں کے درمیان میں سیدھا بیٹھ جانا
- ⑧ تعدیل ارکان یعنی رکوع سجدہ وغیرہ کو اطمینان سے اچھی طرح ادا کرنا
- ⑨ قعدہ اولیٰ یعنی تین اور چار رکعت والی نماز میں دو رکعتوں کے بعد تشہد کی مقدار بیٹھنا
- ⑩ دونوں قعدوں میں تشہد پڑھنا
- ⑪ امام کو نماز فجر، مغرب، عشاء، جمعہ، عیدین، تراویح اور رمضان شریف کے وتر میں آواز سے قرأت کرنا اور ظہر، عصر وغیرہ نمازوں میں آہستہ پڑھنا
- ⑫ لفظ سلام کے ساتھ نماز سے علیحدہ ہونا
- ⑬ نماز وتر میں قنوت کیلئے بکسیر کہنا اور دعائے قنوت پڑھنا
- ⑭ دونوں عیدوں کی نماز میں زائد بکسیر کہنا۔

SUNNATS IN NAMAAZ

Q. What is meant by SUNNAT in NAMAAZ?

A. Things which have been proven to be done in Namaaz by the Holy Prophet (Peace be upon him) but not so much stress has been laid upon them as is laid upon things FARZ and WAJIB are known as SUNNAT. If any of these are missed unknowingly, neither does it invalidate the Namaaz nor does Sajdae Sahw become necessary. If these are left knowingly, the Namaaz is valid and there is no need for Sajdae Sahw. However, such a person is condemned.

THERE ARE 21 SUNNATS IN NAMAAZ

21

- ① To raise the hands upto the EARS before saying TAKBEERE TAHREEMA.
- ② While raising the hands for Takbeer, keep the fingers of both the hands RAISED and facing the QIBLAH.
- ③ Not to BEND the HEAD when saying Takbeer.
- ④ Saying Takbeere Tahreema and other Takbeers ALOUD by the IMAAM according to the NEED, while going from one RUKN (posture) to the other.
- ⑤ To fold the RIGHT hand around the LEFT below the NAVEL.
- ⑥ Saying SANAA.
- ⑦ To recite TA'AWWUZ.
- ⑧ To recite the complete BISMILLAH.
- ⑨ To recite only SURAH FATIHA in the THIRD and FOURTH Rakaats of FARDH Namaaz.
- ⑩ To say AA'MEEN (softly).
- ⑪ To recite Sanaa, Ta'awwuz and Aameen SOFTLY.
- ⑫ To recite as much QIRAAT as is SUNNAT for every Namaaz.

- ⑬ To say TASBIH at least THREE times each in RUKU and SAJDAH.
- ⑭ To keep the BACK and the HEAD in the SAME LEVEL while holding the KNEES with FINGERS of both the hands in RUKU.
- ⑮ Saying by Imaam SAMIALLAHU LIMAN HAMIDAH in Qawmah followed by RABBANA LAKAL HAMD by Muqtadi. The MUNFARID should say both TASMI and TAHMEED.
- ⑯ While going into SAJDAH, FIRST place the KNEES, then the HANDS and lastly the FOREHEAD on the GROUND.
- ⑰ In QA'IDAH or JALSA, placing the LEFT FOOT on the ground HORIZONTALLY and sitting upon it and RAISING the RIGHT FOOT VERTICALLY so that the TOES are facing the QIBLAH and resting both the HANDS on the THIGHS.
- ⑱ To RAISE the INDEX FINGER of the RIGHT HAND as one says "ASH HADU ALLAH ILAHA" in TASHAHHUD.
- ⑲ To recite DUROOD SHARIF in QA'IDAH AKHEERA after TASHAHHUD.
- ⑳ To read DUA after DUROOD SHARIF.
- ㉑ To turn the FACE for SALAAM towards the RIGHT first and then to the LEFT

نماز کی سنتوں کا بیان

سوال۔ نماز کی سنتوں سے کیا مراد ہے؟

جواب۔ جو چیزیں نماز میں حضور رسول کریم ﷺ سے ثابت ہوئی ہیں لیکن ان کی تاکید فرض اور واجب کے برابر ثابت نہیں ہوئی انہیں سنت کہتے ہیں۔ ان چیزوں میں سے کوئی چیز اگر بھولے سے چھوٹ جائے تو نہ نماز ٹوٹتی ہے نہ سجدہ سہو واجب ہوتا ہے نہ گناہ ہوتا ہے۔ اور قصداً چھوڑ دینے سے نماز تو نہیں ٹوٹتی اور نہ سجدہ سہو واجب ہوتا ہے لیکن چھوڑنے والا ملامت کا مستحق ہوتا ہے۔

سوال۔ نماز میں کتنی سنتیں ہیں؟

جواب۔ نماز میں اکیس (۲۱) سنتیں ہیں۔

نماز میں کیس سنتیں ہیں

۲۱

- ① تکبیر تحریر کہنے سے پہلے دونوں ہاتھ کالوں تک اٹھانا
- ② دونوں ہاتھوں کی انگلیاں اپنے حال پر کھلی اور قبلہ رخ رکھنا
- ③ تکبیر کہتے وقت سر کو نہ جھکانا
- ④ امام کو تکبیر تحریر اور ایک رکن سے دوسرے میں جانے کی تمام تکبیریں بقدر حاجت بلند آواز سے کہنا
- ⑤ سیدھے ہاتھ کو بائیں ہاتھ پر ناف کے نیچے باندھنا
- ⑥ ثنا پڑھنا
- ⑦ تَعُوذِ لِّیْ اَعُوْذُ بِاَللّٰهِ پڑھنا
- ⑧ بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ پڑھنا
- ⑨ فرض نماز کی تیسری اور چوتھی رکعت میں صرف سورۃ فاتحہ پڑھنا
- ⑩ آمین کہنا
- ⑪ ثنا اور تَعُوْذ اور بسم اللہ اور آمین سب کو آہستہ پڑھنا
- ⑫ سنت کے موافق کوئی قرأت کرنا یعنی جس جس نماز میں جس قدر قرآن مجید پڑھنا سنت ہے اس کے موافق پڑھنا
- ⑬ رکوع اور سجدے میں تین تین بار تسبیح پڑھنا
- ⑭ رکوع میں سر اور پیٹھ کو ایک سیدھ میں برابر رکھنا اور دونوں ہاتھوں کی کھلی انگلیوں سے گھٹنوں کو پکڑ لینا
- ⑮ قوم میں امام کو سَمِعَ اللّٰهُ لِمَنْ حَمِدَهُ اور مقتدی کو ذَبْنًا لَّكَ الْعَصَدُ کہنا۔ اور منفرد کو تَسْمِع اور تحمید دونوں کہنا
- ⑯ سجدے میں جاتے وقت پہلے دونوں گھٹنے پھر دونوں ہاتھ پھر پیشانی رکھنا
- ⑰ جلسہ اور قعدہ میں بایاں پاؤں بچھا کر اس پر بیٹھنا اور سیدھے پاؤں کو اس طرح کھڑا رکھنا کہ اس کی انگلیوں کے سرے قبلہ کی طرف رہیں اور دونوں ہاتھ رانوں پر رکھنا
- ⑱ تشہد میں اَشْهَدُ اَنْ لَا اِلٰهَ اِلاَّ اَنْتَ پر انگلی سے اشارہ کرنا
- ⑲ قعدہ اخیرہ میں تشہد کے بعد درود شریف پڑھنا
- ⑳ درود کے بعد دعا پڑھنا
- ㉑ پہلے دائیں طرف پھر بائیں طرف سلام پھیرنا۔

MUSTAHABBAAT-E-NAMAAZ

(Preferable Acts in Namaaz)

THERE ARE 5 MUSTAHABS

5

نماز میں پانچ چیزیں مستحب ہیں

1. To pull the PALMS out of the SLEEVES while saying TAKBEER-E-TAHREEMA.
2. Saying TASBEEH more than THREE times in RUKU and SAJDAH by MUNFARID.
3. To keep the EYES towards the place of SAJDAH in QIYAAM, at the TOES in RUKU, towards the LAP in QA'IDA and JALSA, and at the SHOULDERS while turning for SALAAM.
4. To try best NOT to COUGH.
5. To try and keep the MOUTH CLOSED when YAWNING, but if it is OPENED, to COVER it by the UPPER portion of the RIGHT HAND in QIYAAM and by the LEFT HAND in all others postures.

نماز میں پانچ چیزیں مستحب ہیں:

- (۱) تکبیر تحریر کہتے وقت استینوں سے دونوں ہتھیلیوں کو نکال لینا
- (۲) رکوع سجدے میں منفرد کو تین مرتبہ سے زیادہ تسبیح کہنا
- (۳) قیام کی حالت میں سجدے کی جگہ پر اور رکوع میں قدموں کی پیٹھ پر اور جلسہ اور قعدہ میں اپنی گود پر اور سلام کے وقت اپنے کندھوں پر نظر رکھنا
- (۴) کھانسی کو اپنی طاقت بھرنے دینا
- (۵) جمائی میں منہ بند رکھنا اور کھل جائے تو قیام کی حالت میں سیدھے ہاتھ اور باقی حالتوں میں بائیں ہاتھ کی پشت سے منہ چھپا لینا۔

HANAFI DUA TWENTY

MAKRUHAAT-E-NAMAAZ (Acts disliked in Namaaz)

DOING A MAKROOH ACT IN NAMAAZ CAUSES THE FULL BLESSING OF NAMAAZ TO BE LOST ALTHOUGH THE NAMAAZ WILL NOT HAVE TO BE REPEATED.

Some MAKROOH ACTS in NAMAAZ are :

1. Performing NAMAAZ BARE-HEADED due to LAZINESS or CARELESSNESS and to EXPOSE the ARMS ABOVE the ELBOWS.
2. PLAYING with CLOTHES or the BODY.
3. Performing Namaaz in CLOTHES in which people do NOT ORDINARILY LIKE to go OUT.
4. To dust the floor with one's hands to prevent the soiling of clothes.
5. Performing Namaaz when one has the URGE to URINATE or PASS STOOL.
6. To CRACK one's FINGERS or PUTTING of FINGERS of one hand into FINGERS of the other HAND.
7. TURNING the FACE away from QIBLA and LOOKING AROUND.
8. It is MAKROOH for MEN to REST BOTH the ARMS and WRISTS on the GROUND in SAJDAH.
9. Performing Namaaz when another person FACING him sits AHEAD.
10. YAWNING INTENTIONALLY and NOT PREVENTING it if one CAN do so.
11. CLOSING the EYES, but if it is done to CONCENTRATE in Namaaz, it is ALLOWED.
12. It is Makrooh for a Baalig (mature) person to stand alone behind a Saff (row) when there is place in the Saff before him.

13. Performing Namaaz in CLOTHES with PICTURES of LIVING OBJECTS on them.
14. Performing Namaaz at a place where there is a PICTURE of a LIVING (animate) object ABOVE or on the RIGHT or LEFT side of the NAMAAZI or on the place where he makes SAJDAH.
15. To COUNT Aayats, Suras or Tasbihs on FINGERS in Namaaz.
16. Performing Namaaz with a SHEET or CLOTHES WRAPPED on the BODY in such a way that it makes it DIFFICULT to FREE the HANDS QUICKLY.
17. To YAWN and STRETCH ARMS to REMOVE LAZINESS.
18. Doing something AGAINST SUNNAT in Namaaz.

MUFSIDAAT-E-NAMAAZ (Breakers of Namaaz)

MUFSIDAAT-E-NAMAAZ ARE FACTORS WHICH NULLIFY THE PRAYERS (NAMAAZ) AND MAKE IT NECESSARY TO BE REPEATED.

The following are some of the MUFSIDAAT :

1. To TALK in Namaaz KNOWINGLY or UNKNOWINGLY, a FEW WORDS or MANY will NULLIFY the Namaaz.
2. To GREET a person by Assalamu Alaikum, or by any other method while performing Namaaz.
3. To REPLY to GREETINGS or saying Yarhamukallah to one who SNEEZES and saying Ameen to a DUA NOT CONNECTED to his Namaaz.
4. To say Inna Lil Lahi Wa Inna Ilaihi Raajioon on some SAD NEWS or Alhamdulillah or Subhanallah on hearing some GOOD or STRANGE NEWS.
5. To make NOISE or say "OHI" or "AAHI" due to PAIN etc.
6. Correcting the Qiraat of a person other than his own Imaan.
7. To RECITE the QURAAN by LOOKING at the TEXT.

8. To do such an act which gives the IMPRESSION to ONLOOKERS that he is doing something else, rather than PERFORMING Namaaz. This is called AMALE KATHEER.
9. EATING or DRINKING KNOWINGLY or UNKNOWINGLY.
10. To TURN the CHEST away from the QIBLA without an EXCUSE..
11. Doing SAJDA at a NAJIS place.
12. DELAY in COVERING the SATR (private parts) when uncovered, to the extent of performing ONE RUKN in Namaaz.
13. UTTERANCES in PAIN or TROUBLE.
14. An ADULT LAUGHING ALOUD.
15. To STEP AHEAD of the Imaam DURING the Namaaz.
16. Making some GREAT ERROR in the QIRAAT of the HOLY QURAAN.



IT IS PERMISSIBLE TO BREAK ONE'S NAMA'AZ IN THE FOLLOWING CASES:

1. When there is an URGE to PASS URINE or STOOL.
2. When a SNAKE, SCORPION or some other HARMFUL CREATURE or ANIMAL makes its APPEARANCE.
3. When one FEARS that a TRAIN on which one is to TRAVEL would DEPART and thus cause GREAT INCONVENIENCE.
4. When one FEARS that a THIEF would get away with his SHOES or any other PROPERTY.

It is WAJIB to BREAK one's NAMA'AZ in order to ANSWER a PARENT or a GRANDPARENT who has CALLED out in DISTRESS. Nevertheless, it is NOT NECESSARY when someone is AROUND to ASSIST.

It is FARZ to BREAK one's Nama'az when it is FEARED that a BLIND PERSON would FALL into a PIT or a WELL if he is NOT STOPPED. It is FARZ to BREAK one's Nama'az when some person has caught on FIRE and requires ASSISTANCE.

SALAAT WITH JAMA'AT AND IMAAMAT

JAMA'AT is the PERFORMING of SALAAT by MANY persons COLLECTIVELY, in which the IMAAM (leader) conducts the SALAAT and those following him are called MUQTADIS.

To perform the FIVE DAILY SALAAT with JAMA'AT is WAAJIB and to NEGLECT the JAMA'AT is very SINFUL.

Performing SALAAT with JAMA'AT has MANY BENEFITS, eg.:

1. The THAWAAB (reward) of performing Salaat with JAMA'AT in the MASJID is TWENTY SEVEN times GREATER than performing SALAAT ALONE.
2. Muslims MEET FIVE times a day and this creates LOVE and UNITY.
3. The Salaat of the sinful become more acceptable by joining and

performing Salaat with other pious persons, etc.

NB. It is NOT WAJIB upon WOMEN, CHILDREN, SICK PERSONS, those NURSING the SICK, VERY OLD persons and the BLIND to ATTEND the JAMA'AT.

REASONS WHEN A PERSON IS EXCUSED FROM ATTENDING THE JAMA'AT IN A MASJID.

1. HEAVY RAINS.
2. DIRTY and MUDDY ROADS.
3. Very COLD WEATHER.
4. STORMY NIGHT.
5. When a person is a MUSAFIR and the time for DEPARTURE of TRAIN, PLANE or SHIP is NEAR.
6. When one is in NEED to visit the toilet.
7. When one is very HUNGRY and FOOD is being SERVED.

A JAMA'AT consists of AT LEAST TWO persons: the Imaam and the MUQTADI. The MUQTADI should STAND at the RIGHT of the Imaam in such a manner that the TOES of the Muqtadi should be PARALLEL to the ANKLE of the IMAAM. If there are TWO or MORE Muqtadis, the Imaam should STAND AHEAD and the Muqtadis BEHIND.

THE MANNER IN WHICH PEOPLE SHOULD STAND IN JAMA'AT

The Muqtadis should STAND CLOSE to each other and in a STRAIGHT ROW. NO SPACE should be LEFT inbetween, CHILDREN should STAND in the BACK ROW. It is MAKRUH to INCLUDE CHILDREN in the MEN'S ROW.

If the Imaam's Salaat becomes FAASID (void) then the Muqtadi's Salaat will also become FAASID. It will be NECESSARY for the Muqtadis to REPEAT the Salaat.

WHO DESERVES TO BE AN IMAAM

1. That person who knows the MASAA'IL (rules) of Salaat WELL provided he is NOT a FAASIQ (an open sinner).
2. Then a person who can RECITE the HOLY QURAAN WELL.
3. There after a person who is PIOUS.
4. Then the OLDEST person.
5. Then the GOOD-MANNERED and KIND. However, if there is a FIXED Imaam in a Masjid, then he will still DESERVE the HONOUR to be the Imaam.

It is MAKRUH to make a FAASIQ, an IGNORANT person or one who indulges in BID'AT or one who is NOT very CAREFUL in OBSERVING the RULES of SHARI'AT, an IMAAM.

PERSON WHOSE IMAAMAT IS NOT ACCEPTED

SALAAT of any person will not be ACCEPTED if the IMAAM is:

1. Insane (mad)
2. Drunk.
3. Kaafir (disbeliever)
4. Mushrik.
5. If the IMAAM is not BAALIGH (mature), then the Salaat of the BAALIGH will NOT be accepted.
6. If the IMAAM is a WOMAN, Salaat of MALES will NOT be accepted.

MASBOOQ

- ◆ A person who has joined the Imaam whilst the Imaam is in RUKU, will be regarded as one who has performed the complete Rak'at. Once the Imaam has completed the Ruku and a person then joins the Imaam, he has missed a Rak'at. Such a person is known as a

MASBOOQ.

- ◆ A person who has missed any Rak'at and then joined the JAMA'AT, he should continue the Salaat with the Imaam to the end. Once the Imaam turns to say the SECOND SALAAM, the Masboq should stand up and complete the missed number of RAK'AATS.
- ◆ If the Masboq has missed only ONE Raka'at, he should stand up, read the THANA, TA'AWWUZ, TASMIA, SURAH FAATIHA and another SURAH and thereafter complete the Salaat.
- ◆ If the Masboq has missed TWO Raka'ats in FAJR, ZOHAR, ASR or ESHA, he should complete both the Rak'aats by reciting Surah Fatiha and another Surah in both the Raka'ats.
- ◆ If a person has missed TWO Raka'ats in Magrib Salaat, then after completing the first Raka'at make QAIDAH read TASHAHHUD and then stand up for the SECOND Rak'at. After reciting Surah Faatiha and another Surah, complete the Salaat.
- ◆ If THREE Rak'aats were missed in ZOHAR, ASR or ESHA, the Masboq should stand up and read Surah Faatiha and a Surah in the FIRST Raka'at, thereafter make Ruku and Sajdah but BEFORE standing up for the SECOND Raka'at, make QAIDAH (sit down), read Tashahhud and then stand up for the SECOND Rak'at.
- ◆ In the second Raka'at recite Surah Faatiha and another Surah, complete the second Raka'at and WITHOUT sitting for Tashahhud, stand up for the THIRD Rak'at. In the third Raka'at read ONLY Surah Faatiha and complete the Namaaz.
- ◆ If a person has missed all the Raka'ats of any Namaaz, then he should REPEAT the whole Namaaz after the Imaam has said the Salaam except that he should NOT raise his hands to say ALLAHU AKBAR (Takbir) in the FIRST Raka'at.

NB. For a person who joins the JAMA'AT when the Imaam is in RUKU, it is FARZ to stand and recite TAKBEERE TAHREEMA and thereafter to stand at least for the duration long enough in which SUBHANALLAH could be recited once and then go into Ruku.

Reciting Takbeer and going into Ruku without PAUSE is not permissible. The Namaaz performed in such a way will not be valid and should be REPEATED.

- ◆ One should NOT join the JAMA'AT as soon as the Imaam recites the FIRST SALAAM to complete the Namaaz.

N.B. A PERSON SHOULD NOT RUN IN THE MASJID TO JOIN THE JAMA'AT IF HE IS AFRAID OF MISSING ANY RAKA'AT. IT IS NOT PROPER TO RUN IN THE MASJID.

THE QAZAA SALAAT

- ◆ Any Salaat performed in its TIME: Is called ADAA.
- ◆ FARZ and WAAJIB Salaat performed AFTER its time has EXPIRED will be called QAZAA.
- ◆ Eg. If ASR Salaat is performed at MAGHRIB time, it will be Qazaa.
- ◆ To DELAY any FARZ, WAJIB or SUNNATE MUAKKADAH Salaat INTENTIONALLY and cause them to become QAZAA is very SINFUL..
- ◆ It is COMPULSORY upon every MUSLIM to perform the missed number of Farz and Waajib Salaat since the time one has become baaligh (reached the age of PUBERTY).
- ◆ If a person has missed less than SIX Salaat and no other Salaat besides these are QAZAA, then BEFORE beginning the performance of the SIXTH Salaat in its time, QAZAA of the missed number of Salaat will have to be performed in ORDER. Eg. If a person has missed the Fajr, Zohar and Asr Salaat and no other Salaat besides these are Qazaa and the time of Magrib has begun, in this case FIRST the Fajr, Zohar and Asr must be performed in order and thereafter the Magrib Salaat should be performed.
- ◆ If there is FEAR that by performing the Qazaa Salaat, the time for the Adaa Salaat will EXPIRE, then the ADAA Salaat must be performed FIRST. For a person who has missed more than FIVE Salaat, it is NOT necessary upon him to perform the Qazaa Salaat in ORDER.
- ◆ He may perform the ADAA Salaat first and then the QAZAA Salaat.

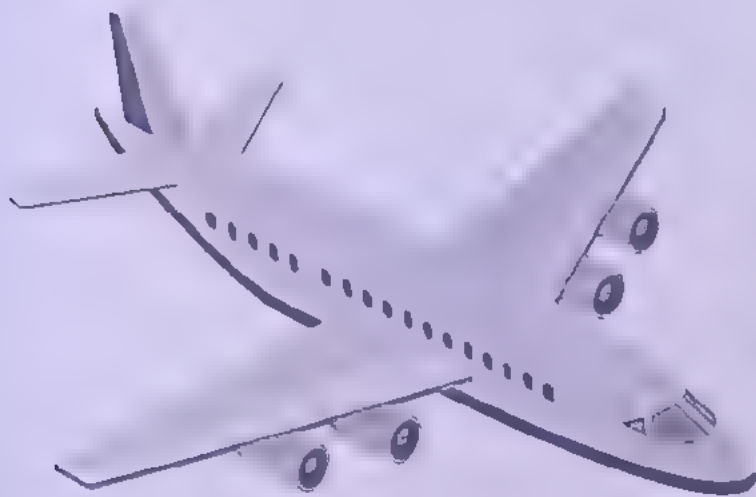
THE NIYYAT OF QAZAA NAMAAZ

1. When making the NIYYAT for QAZAA, it is necessary to make Niyyah for the particular Namaaz missed.
2. If one has missed a number of Salaat, then one should make Niyyat (intention) thus:
 3. I am performing such and such day's Fajr or Zohar.
 4. If a person has missed MORE than ONE Fajr or Zohar, it will not be sufficient to say.
 5. "I am performing Qazaa for Fajr or Zohar". One should say: "I am performing such and such day's Fajr".
6. If one has missed so many Farz Salaat that one does NOT remember the exact number of days when the Salaat was missed, then the Niyyat should be made as follows:
 7. "Oh Allah! I am performing the FIRST Fajr or the FIRST Zohar Farz. from those which I have missed"
 8. Continue doing this until satisfied that all the missed number of Salaat are performed.

THE MUSAAFIR'S (TRAVELLER'S) NAMAAZ

- ◆ In SHARI'AT a person who intends to TRAVEL a distance of 77 kms (48 miles) or more, is called a MUSAAFIR.
- ◆ A person who travels 77 kms or more and intends to REMAIN at one's destination for LESS than 15 days, is also a MUSAAFIR.
- ◆ A Musaafir who intends remaining at his destination for 15 days or more, will only be a Musaafir during his journey. Once he reaches his destination, he will not be a Musaafir.
- ◆ A Musaafir should make QASR of the ZOHAR, ASR and ESHA (FARZ only), ie. one must perform TWO Farz only ie. instead of FOUR Rak'aats.

- ◆ There is no Qasr in the Farz of Fajr and Maghrib. Similarly there is no Qasr of Witr, Sunnat or Nafil Salaat.
- ◆ A Musaafir who performs his Namaaz behind a MUQEEM IMAAM, (who is not a musaafir) should perform the full four Rak'aats in the Zohar, Asr and Esha Farz.
- ◆ If the IMAAM is a musaafir and muqtadi a muqeeem, the Musaafir Imaam should complete his Namaaz after two Rak'aats and there after he must ask the muqeeem muqtadis to complete their Namaaz by saying.
- ◆ "Complete your Namaaz, I am a Musaafir," The muqeeem muqtadis should then stand up and complete the remaining two Rak'aats without reciting Surah Faatiha and any other Surahs.



Note

تَعْلِيمُ الْحَقِّ
Ta'leemul Haq

جمعہ، عیدین
اور بیمار کی
نماز کا بیان

Jumu'ah,
Eidain
and the
Namaaz of
the Sick

جمعه

JUMUAH (FRIDAY) SALAAT

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

يَا أَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا إِذَا تُوذِيَ لِلصَّلَاةِ مِنْ يَوْمِ الْجُمُعَةِ فَاسْعَوْا إِلَى ذِكْرِ اللَّهِ وَذَرُوا الْبَيْعَ ۚ ذَٰلِكُمْ خَيْرٌ لَكُمْ إِنْ كُنْتُمْ تَعْلَمُونَ. فَإِذَا قُضِيَتِ الصَّلَاةُ فَانْتَشِرُوا فِي الْأَرْضِ وَابْتَغُوا مِنْ فَضْلِ اللَّهِ وَاذْكُرُوا اللَّهَ كَفِيرًا تَعْلَمُونَ.

"O you who believe! When the call is made for Salaat on FRIDAY, then HASTEN to the REMEMBRANCE of ALLAH and LEAVE off BUSINESS. That is BETTER for you if you know. Thus, when the Salaat is completed, then disperse through the land and seek Allah's GRACE and REMEMBER Allah OFTEN that you may be SUCCESSFUL." (Al Qur'an 62: 9)

SUMMARY OF JUMUAH SALAAT

JUMUAH 14 RAKAATS

SUNNAT 4 Muakkadah	After which comes the KHUTBA	FARZ 2 Said in congregation	SUNNAT 2 Muakkadah	SUNNAT 2 Muakkadah	NAFL 2 Optional
--------------------------	---	--------------------------------------	--------------------------	--------------------------	-----------------------

Jumuah Salaat is FARZ and more emphasis has been laid on it than on ZOHAR. There is no Zohar Farz Salaat on Friday. The Jumuah Salaat has been fixed in place of Zohar Salaat.

Jumuah Salaat is FARZ on all FREE, MAJOR, SANE, HEALTHY and MUQEEM MEN.

It is NOT Farz on MINOR CHILDREN, SLAVES, MAD, SICK and BLIND PERSONS, MUSAFIRS, WOMEN and those who have some VALID EXCUSE, eg. fear of an enemy or very heavy rain. They should perform

their ZOHAR Salaat instead.

THE CONDITIONS FOR SAYING THE JUMUAH SALAAT

1. The Jumuah Salaat should be in a city, BIG VILLAGE or a TOWN like the CITY. It is NOT PROPER, to perform the Jumuah Salaat in a SMALL VILLAGE.
 2. Jumuah should be performed at Zohar time.
 3. KHUTBAH (address by the Imaam) should be delivered BEFORE the Salaat.
 4. The Salaat should be read with JAMA'AT. It is compulsory to have at least three men besides the Imaam to offer the Salaat or else the Salaat will not be valid.
 5. IZNE AAM (permission to all to attend).
- ◆ If all these FIVE CONDITIONS are found, performing of the Jumuah Salaat will be CORRECT.

THE MASNOON METHOD OF DELIVERING KHUTBA

Before the Jumuah Salaat, the Imaam should sit on the MIMBAR (the raised platform in the Masjid) and the Moazzin should call out the Azaan in the presence of the Imaam. The Imaam should then stand up and deliver the KHUTBA facing the congregation. It is MAKROOHE TAHREEMEE to deliver the KHUTBAH in any language besides ARABIC.

After the FIRST Khutba he should sit down for a while and then stand up again for the SECOND Khutba. Thereafter the Imaam should step down and stand in FRONT of the MEHRAAB or the ARCH. The Moazzin should call out the TAKBEER and those present should stand up and offer their Salaat with the IMAAM.

The Azaan for the Khutba should be said in FRONT of the KHATEEB (the person delivering the Khutbah), near the MIMBAR or from the SECOND or THIRD ROW of the Namaazis or at the END of the ROWS or from

OUTSIDE the MASJID. It is ALLOWED in all the ways.

THINGS NOT ALLOWED DURING THE KHUTBA

1. Talking.
2. Offering SUNNAT and NAFL Salaat.
3. Eating.
4. Drinking.
5. To reply to any TALK.
6. Reciting the QURAAN SHARIF, etc.

All those things which DISTURB the Khutba become MAKROOH from the minute the Imaam prepares to deliver the Khutba.



SALAAT OF THE EIDAIN

(EIDUL-FITR and EIDUL-ADHAA)

Things which are MUSTAHAB and SUNNAT on EID DAYS:

1. To take a BATH and do MISWAAK.
 2. To put on one's BEST CLOTHES.
 3. To use ITR.
 4. To take DATES or any other SWEETS before going for the EIDUL-FITR Salaat.
 5. To give SADAQATUL-FITR before going for the EIDUL-FITR Salaat.
 6. To perform the Eid Salaat at the EID-GAAH (a place fixed for EID Salaat outside the population).
 7. To go by FOOT.
 8. To go by ONE ROUTE and return by ANOTHER.
 9. NOT to perform NAFL at HOME or at the EID-GAAH BEFORE and AFTER the EID Salaat.
 10. To EAT the MEAT of QURBAANI (sacrifice) of one's own offering, after the EIDUL-ADHAA Salaat.
- ◆ On EIDUL-FITR one should say TAKBIR in a LOW voice while going for Salaat.
 - ◆ It is MUSTAHAB to say TAKBIR ALOUD while going for EIDUL-ADHAA Salaat.
 - ◆ Both the Eid Salaat are WAAJIB upon all those on whom the Jumuah Salaat is FARZ.
 - ◆ The conditions for Eid Salaat are the same as those for Jumuah.
 - ◆ However, KHUTBA is NOT Farz for EID nor is it Farz to be said BEFORE the Salaat.
 - ◆ KHUTBA after Salaat is SUNNAT.
 - ◆ There are TWO Rak'aats in each of the TWO Eid Salaat with SIX

extra TAKBIRS.

- ◆ There is NO Azaan or Iqaamat.

HOW TO PERFORM THE EID SALAAT

First of all the NIYYAT should be made as follows:

"I am performing TWO Rak'at EIDUL-FITR (or Eidul-Adha) Wajib with six extra Takbeers behind this Imaam, (Allahu Akbar)".

- ◆ Fold the HANDS after the Takbeere Tahreema and read THANA.
1. Then raising both the hands upto the EARS bring them down after saying Allahu Akbar.
 2. Do the same for the second time.
 3. For the third time raise the hands upto the ears and saying Takbir fold them below the navel.
- ◆ The Imaam should read the Ta'awwuz, Tasmiah and Surah Faatiha along with another Surah and then go into RUKU.
1. When all stand up for the SECOND Rak'at, the Imaam should recite the QIRAAT and after that all should say TAKBEER and raise the hands upto the ears and let them down.
 2. Again the hands should be raised upto the ears for the Second Takbeer and let down.
 3. For the THIRD Takbeer the hands should also be raised upto the ears and let down.
 4. Then saying the FOURTH Takbeer everyone should go into Ruku and complete the Salaat as usual.
 5. Then the Imaam should stand up and deliver the Khutba and all should sit SILENTLY and HEAR the same.
 6. There are TWO Khutbas also for Eidain. The Imaam's sitting for a while in between the two is MASNOON.
 7. It is WAAJIB to LISTEN to the Khutba of Eidain.

NAMAAZ OF A SICK PERSON

as follows: A person is ALLOWED to perform his SALAAT in the SITTING POSITION under these circumstances:

- ◆ When a SICK person has NO STRENGTH to STAND and perform his Salaat.
- ◆ STANDING causes him GREAT PAIN.
- ◆ It may INCREASE his ILLNESS.
- ◆ When a SICK person is ABLE to STAND but CANNOT go into RUKU or SAJDA.
- ◆ If a person does NOT have the strength to make RUKU or SAJDA, then the Ruku and Sajda must be made by ISHARA (gestures), ie. BOWING the HEAD SLIGHTLY for RUKU and MORE for SAJDA.
- ◆ If a person CANNOT perform his Salaat SITTING, then he should perform it LYING DOWN.
Eg. LIE down on the BACK with the LEGS towards the QIBLA.
The LEGS should NOT be STRETCHED but the KNEES should be RAISED.
The HEAD should REST at a HIGH LEVEL with a PILLOW under it.
The Salaat must be made by ISHARA (gestue), but for SAJDA he should BOW his HEAD MORE than for RUKU.
This is the BEST and MOST PREFERRED POSTURE.



- ◆ If the KNEES CANNOT be RAISED then one CAN STRETCH one's LEGS towards the QIBLA but the HEAD should be RAISED and FACING the QIBLAH.

- ◆ One may also LIE down on the RIGHT SIDE with the HEAD towards the QIBLA or the LEFT SIDE with the HEAD towards the QIBLA. However, it is PREFERABLE to LIE on the RIGHT SIDE.

- ◆ If a person FAINTS for LESS than a FULL DAY and NIGHT, he MUST perform the missed number of Salaat.

- ◆ However, if he FAINTS for a FULL day and night or more, he must not perform the Salaat he has missed. He is EXEMPTED from performing them and there is NO QAZAA.

- ◆ If the patient has NO STRENGTH even to MOVE the HEAD for ISHARA (gesture), then one should NOT perform the Salaat.

- ◆ If this condition continues for MORE than a DAY and NIGHT, one will NOT be BOUND to perform QAZA for the missed number of Salaat.

- ◆ If one GAINS the strength of moving the HEAD for ISHARA (gesture) within a day or night or in a period lesser than that, the QAZA will have to be performed for the five or lesser Salaat.

NB. TAYAMMUM is PERMITTED when it is KNOWN by one's OWN EXPERIENCE or a GOOD DOCTOR says that the USE of WATER would DEFINITELY be INJURIOUS to one's HEALTH.

- ◆ If a sick person's bedding is NAJIS (impure) and changing it would cause great inconvenience to the patient, then Narnaaz may be performed on the same bedding.

- ◆ A PARALYSED person or one who is so sick that he cannot use water for ISTINJA, should use toilet paper or something absorbent or dry clay to clean himself.

- ◆ If he cannot do this also, he should perform his Salaat without even making Istinja.

- ◆ One who has undergone eye surgery and is not allowed to shake his head by the doctor, should perform his Salaat lying down.

- ◆ TAYAMMUM should be made if he cannot make WUDHU. If he cannot perform Tayammum himself, he may be assisted.

THE NAMAAZ OF ISTIKHAARAH

نماز استخارہ کا بیان

مسئلہ: جب کوئی کام کرنے کا ارادہ کرے تو اللہ میاں سے صلاح لے لیوے۔ اس صلاح لینے کو استخارہ کہتے ہیں۔ حدیث شریف میں اس کی بہت ترغیب آئی ہے، نبی کریم صلی اللہ علیہ وسلم نے فرمایا ہے کہ اللہ تعالیٰ سے صلاح نہ لینا اور استخارہ نہ کرنا بدبختی اور کم نصیبی کی بات ہے۔ کہیں ممکن کرے یا بیاہ کرے یا سفر کرے یا اور کوئی کام کرے تو بے استخارہ کئے نہ کرے، تو انشاء اللہ تعالیٰ کبھی اپنے کئے پر پشیمانی نہ ہوگی۔

مسئلہ: استخارہ کی نماز کا یہ طریقہ ہے کہ پہلے دو رکعت نفل نماز پڑھے اس کے بعد خوب دل لگا کر یہ دعا پڑھے۔۔۔۔۔ (جو نیچے لکھی گئی ہے) اور جب هَذَا الْاَمْرُ پر پہنچے جس پر لکیر بنی ہے تو اس کے پڑھتے وقت اسی کام کا دھیان کر لے جس کے لئے استخارہ کرنا چاہتی ہے، اس کے بعد پاک و صاف بچھونے پر قبلہ کی طرف منہ کر کے با وضو سوجائے۔ جب ٹوکرائٹھے اس وقت جو بات دل میں مضبوطی سے آوے وہی بہتر ہے، اسی کو کرنا چاہئے۔

مسئلہ: اگر ایک دن میں کچھ معلوم نہ ہوا اور دل کا خلجیوں ورتہ دہندہ چاوے تو دوسرے دن پھر ایسا ہی کرے، اسی طرح سات دن تک کرے، انشاء اللہ تعالیٰ ضرور اس کان کی اچھائی برائی معلوم ہو جاوے گی۔

مسئلہ: اگر حج کے کئے جانا ہو تو یہ استخارہ نہ کرے کہ میں جاؤں یا نہ جاؤں بلکہ یوں استخارہ کرے کہ فدانے دن جاؤں یا نہ جاؤں۔

When a person wishes to carry out some important work, guidance should be sought from Allah Ta'aala. This seeking of guidance is called ISTIKHAARAH. Nabi (ﷺ) has mentioned that a person who does not seek guidance from Allah Ta'ala and does not carry out Istikhaarah is deprived of all good and is unfortunate. InshaAllah there will be no regret if Istikhaarah is made before accepting a proposal for marriage, travel, important business or any other important task.

Perform two Rak'aats Nafil Salaat. Thereafter praise Allah by saying ALHAMDULILLAHAH Thereafter recite Durood upon Nabi (ﷺ)

اَللّٰهُمَّ صَلِّ عَلٰى سَيِّدِنَا مُحَمَّدٍ وَعَلٰى اٰلِ سَيِّدِنَا مُحَمَّدٍ وَبَارِكْ وَسَلِّمْ ط

AND RECITE THE DU'AA OF ISTIKHAARAH:

اَللّٰهُمَّ اِنِّیْ اَسْتَخِیْرُكَ بِعِلْمِكَ وَاسْتَغْفِرُكَ بِقُدْرَتِكَ وَاسْئَلُكَ مِنْ
فَضْلِكَ الْعَظِیْمِ فَاِنَّكَ تَقْدِرُ وَلَا اَقْدِرُ وَتَعْلَمُ وَلَا اَعْلَمُ وَاَنْتَ
عَلَّامُ الْغُیُوبِ اَللّٰهُمَّ اِنْ كُنْتَ تَعْلَمُ اَنَّ هَذَا الْاَمْرَ خَیْرٌ لِّیْ فِیْ دِیْنِیْ
وَمَعَاشِیْ وَعَاقِبَةِ اَمْرِیْ فَاقْدِرْهُ لِیْ وَیَسِّرْهُ لِیْ ثُمَّ بَارِكْ لِیْ فِیْهِ. وَاِنْ
كُنْتَ تَعْلَمُ اَنَّ هَذَا الْاَمْرَ شَرٌّ لِّیْ فِیْ دِیْنِیْ وَمَعَاشِیْ وَعَاقِبَةِ اَمْرِیْ
فَاَصْرِفْهُ عَنِّیْ وَاصْرِفْنِیْ عَنْهُ وَاقْدِرْ لِیْ الْخَیْرَ حَیْثُ كَانَ ثُمَّ اَرْضِنِیْ بِهِ.

"Allahumma inni astakheeruka bi'ilmika, wa astagfiruka bi qudratika, wa as-aluka min fadhlika-al-azeem, fa innaka taqdiru, walaa aqdiru, wata'lamu walaa a'lamu, wa anta 'allaamul guyyoob. Allahumma in kunta ta'lamu anna haadhal-amra (here the person makes mention of the matter for which guidance is sought, i.e., "should I move, take that job, marry her, etc.") khairul-lee fii dinii, wama'aashii, wa'aaqibata amrii, faqdurhu lii, wa yassir-hu lii, thumma baarik lii fihi, wa in kunta ta'lamu anna haadhal-amra (also at this point the person makes mention of the matter for which guidance is sought) sharrun lee fii dinii, wa ma'aashii, wa'aaqibati amrii, fas-rifhu 'annii was-rifnii 'anhu wa-aqdir lee-al-khaira haithu kaana thumma ardhini bihi."

Translation "O Lord, I seek your guidance, through Your knowledge and power; and I ask You of Your great bounties; for You decree and I do not decree; and You know and I know not; You are the Knower of invisible things. O Lord, if You know that this matter (here the person makes mention of the matter for which guidance is sought, i.e., "should I move, take that job, marry her, etc."), is of benefit to me in my religion, in my livelihood and in its outcome, decide it for me and make it easy for me and then bless it for me. And if You know that this matter (here again the person makes mention of the matter for which guidance is sought)

Upon reciting the underline words think of the reason or work for which Istikhaarah is being made. Thereafter sleep on a clean bedding with

Wudhu facing the Qiblah.

Upon awaking carry out that task on which the heart is firm. If one cannot reach a solution on the first day, Istikhaarah should be continued until the seventh day. Insha-Allah by this period the doubt will be over.

One should not make Istikhaarah for performing a Farz duty, eg. should I perform Hajj or not. Istikhaarah should rather be made to determine the time of travel for Hajj, eg. When should I travel for Hajj?

THE NAMAAZ OF TAUBAH

نماز توبہ کا بیان

اگر کوئی بات خلافِ شرح ہو جاوے تو دو رکعت نماز نفل پڑھ کر اللہ تعالیٰ کے سامنے خوب گزرگزا کر اس سے توبہ کرے اور اپنے کئے پر پچھتاوے اور اللہ تعالیٰ سے معاف کراوے اور آئندہ کے لئے پکاراواہ کرے کہ اب کبھی نہ کروں گی اس سے دو گناہ بفضلِ خدا معاف ہو جاتا ہے۔

If a person has committed any sin, perform two Rak'aats Salaat and thereafter recite Durood upon Nabi (ﷺ). Be ashamed and regret over the sin and seek Allah's pardon by a firm pledge saying: Oh Allah! I shall not commit this sin again. Oh Allah! forgive me.

By the grace of Allah Ta'ala the sin will be forgiven.



SAJDH TILAAWAT

1. There are fourteen places of Sajdah-e-Tilaawat in the Holy Qur'aan. Whenever the word "Sajdah" appears on the margin of the Holy Qur'aan, then on reciting that verse; Sajdah becomes Waajib. This Sajdah is known as Sajdah-e-Tilaawat.

N.B.: The Sajdah appearing in the last Rukoo' of Sooratul Hajj (last page of the 17th Parah) is not for Hanafees.

2. The method of making Sajdah-e-Tilaawat is as follows: the person should say Allahu Akbar and go into Sajdah. When saying "Allahu Akbar" the hands should not be raised. While in Sajdah, say:

سُبْحَانَ رَبِّيَ الْأَعْلَى

Sub-haana rabbiyal a'ala

at least three times. Thereafter, he should say Allahu Akbar and raise his head. The Sajdah-e-Tilaawat is now complete.

3. It is preferable to stand up and then say Allahu Akbar and go into Sajdah. And thereafter to say Allahu Akbar and stand up from the Sajdah. It is also permissible to go into Sajdah and come up from it while in the sitting position without standing up at all.
4. Sajdah-e-Tilaawat becomes Waajib on the person who recites a verse of Sajdah and also on the person who hears it being recited. This is irrespective of whether the person had sat down with the intention of listening to the Qur'aan, or whether he was preoccupied with some work, or whether he heard it without intending to listen to it. It is therefore better to recite the verse of Sajdah softly so that Sajdah-e-Tilaawat does not become Waajib on anyone else.
5. Those factors that are a pre-requisite for Salaat, are also pre-requisites for Sajdah-e-Tilaawat. That is, the person must be in a state of Wudhoo, the place must be clean, the body and clothing must be pure, Sajdah must be made in the direction of the Qiblah, etc.
6. If a person recites a verse of Sajdah while he is in Salaat, then

upon reciting the verse, he should immediately go into Sajdah and then continue with the rest of the Soorah, and then go into Rukoo. If a person does not go immediately into Sajdah, but goes into Sajdah after reciting a few more verses; even then this Sajdah will be proper. And if he recites several more verses and then goes into Sajdah, the Sajdah will be proper, but he will be sinning.

If he recites a verse of Sajdah while in Salaat, but did not make Sajdah in the Salaat; then the Sajdah will not be valid if he makes it out of Salaat. He will remain a sinner forever. Now there is no way of absolving himself except through repentance and seeking forgiveness.



QUESTIONS

1. What should one ensure before Namaaz?
2. Will the Namaaz be correct if any garment is overlapping the ankles?
3. Is it necessary to make a verbal intention for Namaaz?
4. Where should the eyes be fixed during Qiyaam?
5. Explain the difference between a male's and a female's Ruku and Sajda.
6. Explain the difference in the sitting posture between a male and a female.
7. Explain in detail the procedure of the three Witr Waajib.
8. What is Namaaz ?
9. Mention the conditions of Namaaz.
10. Outline the difference between a male's and a female's Satr.
11. Draw and complete the Namaaz chart.
12. Mention the times when it is forbidden to perform any Namaaz.
13. Mention the prescribed time for each Namaaz.
14. Mention the Farz, Waajibaat, 10 Sunnats, Mustahabs, 10 Makruhaat and the Mufsideate Namaaz.
15. Mention the times when it is permissible, Waajib and Farz to break one's Namaaz.
16. How should one perform Qazaa of a number of Salaat missed.
17. When will a person become a Musaafir and how long will one remain a Musaafir?
18. For which Namaaz should one make Qasr?
19. Mention the conditions for the JUMUAH Salaat.
20. Mention things not allowed during the Khutbah.
21. How should one perform the Eid Salaat?
22. When is it permissible to perform Namaaz seated?
23. If one does not have the strength to make Ruku or Sajdah, what should he do?
24. In the case of fainting, when is a person excused from performing Namaaz?
25. Can a sick person perform Namaaz on a Napaak (unclean) bedding?

تَعْلِيمُ الْحَقِّ
Ta'leemul Haq

نماز جنازه کا بیان
Janaazah
Death & Burial
of a Muslim



JANAZAH (PRAYER OVER DEAD BODY) DEATH AND BURIAL OF A MUSLIM

THE MUHTADHAR

A person on whom the signs of DEATH are clearly seen is called a MUHTADHAR. It is SUNNAT to let him lie on his RIGHT side facing the QIBLAH. It is permitted that he be positioned to lie on his BACK with his FEET towards the QIBLAH, and the head slightly raised with a cushion so that it faces the Qiblah. all the bed linen must be PAAK. If moving the Muhtadhar causes him any discomfort then leave him in any convenient position.

- ◆ It is desirable to use LOBAAN, itr or any other aromatics that are Paak in the room. Anyone who is in the state of Janaabat, Haiz or Nifas must leave the apartment.
- ◆ At this time the recitals of Surahs YASEEN (starting at the 17th Ruku of the 22nd Para) and RA'D (beginning at the 6th Ruku of the 13th Para) is recommended. This may be done in the same room. When one is incapable of reciting the Qur'an, someone else may be requested to recite these Surahs or any other portion of the Qur'an.

THE TALQEEN

TALQEEN is to remind the dying person of the two SHAHADATS, (i.e. *Ash hadu alla ilaha illallahu was ash hadu anna Muhammadan abduhu wa Rasuluh*). When the end nears the dying person's breath quickens, the knees become so weak that they cannot move, the nose becomes bent and the temples subside. By these signs understand that the person is nearing the end.

The Talqeen should be read before the dying person takes his last

breaths. The Muhtadhar must NOT be asked or ORDERED to read the Kalimah, but must be helped to recall it. This can easily be done by reciting the Kalimah aloud while being present in the room. Once the departing person utters the Kalimah all who are present should remain SILENT. The dying person should NOT be drawn into any WORLDLY discussions, but if he discusses any worldly affair, then the Talqeen should be repeated.

After the Muhtadhar passes away, his mouth should be kept CLOSED by fastening a piece of Paak material around his chin and over his head, his eyes should also be closed. Both feet should be tied together with a similar piece of cloth, and the body covered with a Paak sheet.

The one who does this should read:

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ وَعَلَىٰ مِلَّةِ رَسُولِ اللَّهِ

Bismillaahi, wa 'ala millati rasoolillaah (ﷺ)

(In the name of Allah and on creed, religion and faith of Rasulullah (ﷺ))

He may further read :

اللَّهُمَّ يَسِّرْ عَلَيْهِ أَمْرَهُ وَسَهِّلْ عَلَيْهِ مَا بَعْدَهُ وَأَسْعِدْهُ
بِلِقَائِكَ وَاجْعَلْ مِمَّا خَرَجَ إِلَيْهِ خَيْرًا مِمَّا خَرَجَ عَنْهُ

Allahumma yassir 'alaihi amrahu wa-sahhil 'alaihi maa ba'adahu
wa-as'idhu blliqaaiika waj-'al mimmaa kharaja ilalhi khairam mimmaa
kharaja 'anhu

(O! Allah, ease upon him matters, and make light for him whatever comes hereafter, and honour him with Your meeting and make that which he has gone to better than that which he come out from.)

N.B It is MAKROOH (disliked) to recite the Holy Qur'an near the deceased person's body during the period between DEATH and the GHUSL.

All the individuals of the deceased's family may read :

اللَّهُمَّ اغْفِرْ لِي وَلَهُ وَأَعْقِبْنِي مِنْهُ عَقْبًا حَسَنًا

Allahumm-maghfirli wa lahu wa-a'aqlbni minhu 'uqban hasanan
(O! Allah, forgive me and him, and grant me a good reward after him.)

And those who are grieved by this demise may read.

إِنَّا لِلّٰهِ وَإِنَّا إِلَيْهِ رَاجِعُونَ

Innaa lillaahi wa inna ilahi raaji'oon
(To Allah do we belong, and to Him shall we return)

اَللّٰهُمَّ اَجِرْنِيْ فِيْ مُصِيبَتِيْ وَاخْلِفْ لِيْ خَيْرًا مِّنْهَا

Allahumm ajurni fee museebati wakhlifli khairam minhaa
(O! Allah, reward me in my affliction, and requite me with
(something) better than this.)

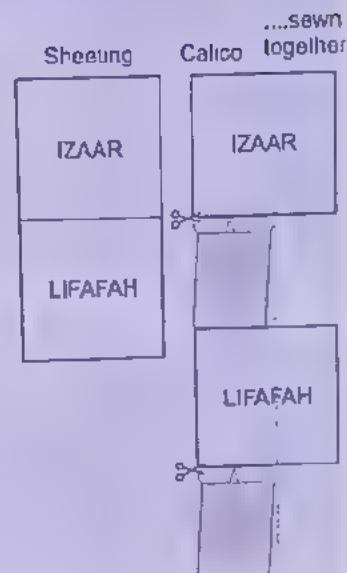
WHAT TO DO AFTER A PERSON HAS PASSED AWAY

1. Obtain a doctor's certificate.
2. Obtain a burial order.
3. Obtain a death certificate.
4. If the body is to be removed from one Municipality to another (e.g. from Umzinto to Durban) then it is necessary to obtain a REMOVAL ORDER from the police of the town in which the death took place.
5. If the death is due to unnatural causes (e.g. drowning or a motor accident, etc.) then one must comply with the legal requirements.
6. Inform relatives and friends of the death and of the time of Janazah.
7. Prepare the QAB'R.
8. Perform GHUSL.
9. Put on the KAFAN.
10. Arrange transport if the QABRASTAAN (cemetery) is at a distance.

REQUIREMENTS FOR MALE AND FEMALE KAFN

- a. **SHEETING** : 4 metres-140 cm, 150 cm or 180 cm wide according to the size of the body (1.75 metres for Izaar and 2.25 metres for Lifafah) OR

CALICO : 8 metres-90 cm wide (3.50 metres for Izaar and 4.50 metres for Lifafah). These have to be cut in half and sewn together.



- b. **CALICO** : 1.80 metres, 90 cm wide for Qamees.

- c. Any other material 2.50 metres, 115 cm wide, this has to be made into two pieces for Tehbands, about 115 cm x 115 cm. The balance should be used for making up bag like mittens, to be used for covering hands when performing Ghusl. A few strips must be kept for fastening the bags onto the hands and for tying the Kafn after it has been put on.

- d. 60 grams camphor cut fine, 60 grams sandal wood powder and rose water for paste to be put on parts of the body that touch the ground when making Sajdah.

- e. One small bottle Itr or Hunoot if easily available, for males only. (Hunoot is anything with which a corpse is perfumed, consisting of musk, sandal wood, ambergis and camphor or any PAAK substance.)

ADDITIONAL KAFN REQUIREMENTS FOR FEMALES

- a. **CALICA**: 1.40 metres, 90 cm wide for Khimaar (Orni).
- b. **CALICO**: 1.80 to 2.50 metres, 90 cm wide for a woman's breast, (Sina band).

MALE AND FEMALE

NAME OF GARMENT	LENGTH	WIDTH	DESCRIPTION
Izaar	180 cm (2 yds)	150 cm / 180 cm (60" / 72")	To cover from head to toe
Lifalah (Chaadar)	225 cm (2½ yds)	150 cm / 180 cm (60" / 72")	15 cm longer than Izaar
Qamees (Kafni)	180 to 250 cm (2 to 2¾ yds)	90 cm (36")	From shoulder to below the knees
ADDITIONAL ITEMS FOR FEMALES ONLY			
Orme (Khimaar)	140 cm (1½ yds)	90 cm (36")	To cover head and hair over breast
Sinaband	180 to 250 cm (2 to 2¾ yds)	90 cm (36")	From under the arm pits to the thighs.

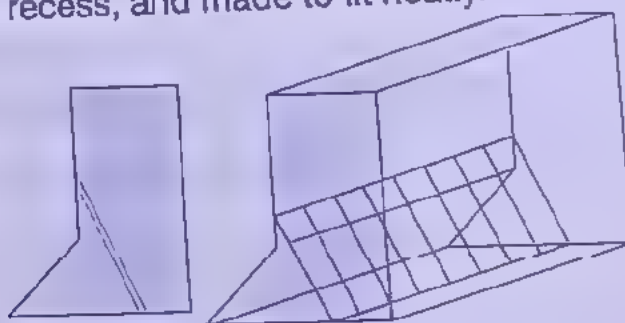
REQUIREMENTS FOR QABR:

- ◆ Unbaked bricks, bamboo or timber where the ground is soft.
- ◆ Sufficient spades.
- ◆ The approximate depth of a grave for adults should be according to the height of the deceased.

THE QABR

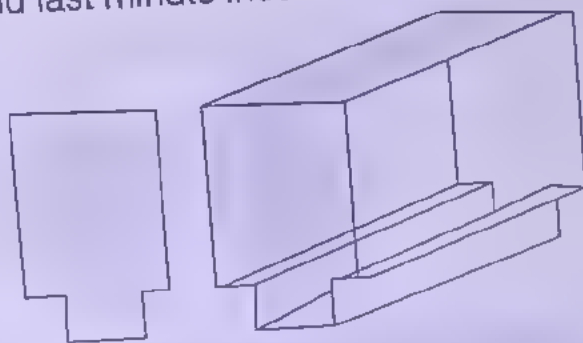
GRAVES ARE OF TWO TYPES:

- The LAHAD:** Where the ground and sides of the Qabr are firm, then a recess should be dug on the Qiblah side to allow placing the body in the recess. Unbaked bricks should preferably be used to close the recess, and made to fit neatly.



Section and View of LAHD Type QABR

- b. **The SHIQ:** where the soft nature of the ground does not allow a LAHD to be made, then a shallow trench should be dug in the centre at the bottom of the Qabr, to allow the body to be placed in this trench. Timber may be used to cover this. The use of any fabrics or blankets, etc is undesirable and wasteful. The bamboo or planks must be cut to size and set to fit properly in the grave before burial, to avoid last minute inconvenience.



Section and View of SHIQ Type QABR

Note: It is MAKROOH (undesirable) to dig out and prepare one's own grave during one's lifetime.

THE KAFN

The Kafn are the grave clothes of the dead. It is desirable that the Kafn be of white material and of medium quality according to the status of the deceased. Rasulullah (ﷺ) said "Do not use expensive cloth in Kafn, because it will very soon decay." It is PERMISSIBLE to prepare one's Kafn during one's lifetime. This will avoid last minute rush and inconvenience.

KAFN FOR MALE

The MASNOON Kafn for a male is an IZAAR, QAMEES and LIFAFAH. The Izaar in this case is a sheet from the head to the feet, whereas the Qamees is a long sheet that has to be folded in half and an opening cut to allow it to be put on as a shirt. The latter will have no pockets, sleeves or seams. The Lifafah is a sheet from above the head to below the feet, (see diagrams on page 153.) Just TWO, the Izaar and Lifafah will also suffice, but it is SUNNAT to have the THREE. It is MAKROOH to use less than two without a valid reason.

KAFN FOR FEMALE

The MASNOON Kafn for a female consists of an IZAAR, KHIMAAR (Orni), QAMEES, LIFAFAH and a piece of material to hold the breasts (SINABAND). The Khimaar is the Veil. The piece of material to hold the breasts should preferably be from the breasts to the thighs. Three garments, i.e. Izaar, Lifafah and Khimaar will suffice, but it is SUNNAT to have FIVE. It is MAKROOH to use less than THREE, except when it is NOT available. It is the duty of the husband to bear the burial expenses of the wife. The Kafn could be smoked with LOBAAN, etc. but NOT scented with ltr. Children's Kafn should be cut to appropriate size.

GHUSL REQUIREMENTS

1. Clean luke warm water.
2. A broad bench, stand or platform.
3. Two large buckets for warm water, one small bucket or utensil, this is for the water to be mixed with a little camphor for use at the end of the Ghusl.
4. Two jugs or mugs for pouring water over the corpse.
5. Leaves of BER tree (Zizyphus Jujuba) if easily available, to be mixed with the luke warm water and a cake of soap.
6. 250 g. of cotton wool.
7. Two Tehbands and two bag like mittens with strips.
8. A scissor for removing the deceased's clothing.
9. Lobaan (Frankincense-Aromatic gum resin obtained from trees) or any other Paak incense for smoking the bench, stand or platform.
10. One clean sheet to cover during Ghusl and one to cover before after Ghusl.
11. One clean towel or a piece of material for drying the corpse.

WHO SHOULD PERFORM THE GHUSL

The Ghusl is the bath for the body of the dead person. An adult male should be bathed by his FATHER, SON or BROTHER. An adult female

by her MOTHER, DAUGHTER or SISTER. If none of these persons are present then any near relative could carry out this duty (male for male and female for female). If any of these are not in the position to perform the Ghusl then the most pious person present should be requested to carry out this rite. The person giving the Ghusl should be assisted by others. The person performing the Ghusl must himself or herself be Paak and in a state of Wudhu. It is MAKROOH for a woman who is MENSTRUATING or in a state of NIFAAS (period after birth of a child) to perform the Ghusl.

- ◆ If a MALE passes away and there are NO MALES to bathe him then no other woman besides his WIFE is permitted to carry out the Ghusl.
- ◆ In the case of a WOMAN if there are no LADIES to perform the GHUSL the HUSBAND CANNOT perform the Ghusl of his WIFE.
- ◆ In both instance TAYAMMUM should be performed. The Tayammum for Ghusl is the same as that for Wudhu.
- ◆ A CHILD who has NOT reached the age (Male or Female) may be given Ghusl by any adult male or female if a member of the same sex is not available.

THE GHUSL

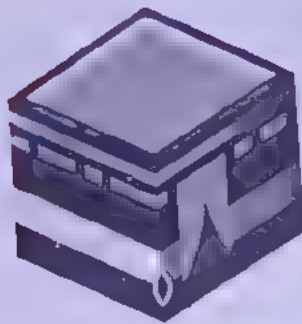
(Masnoon Sequence of the Ghusl)

سوال: غسل کے وقت منہ مردہ کا کس طرف ہو؟

جواب: غسل کے وقت تختہ پر مردہ کو رکھنے کی دو صورتیں لکھی ہیں۔

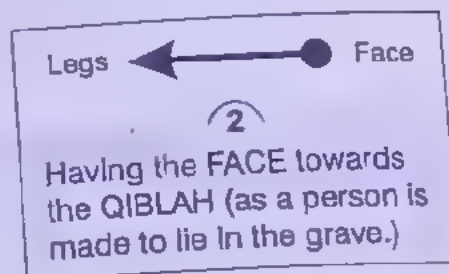
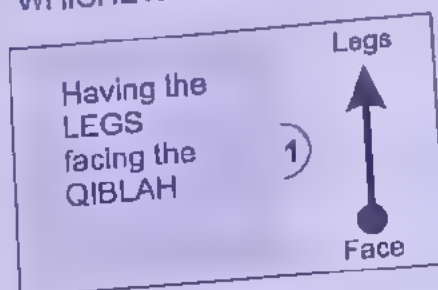
ایک، تو قبلہ کی جانب پاؤں کر کے لٹانا۔ دوسرے، قبلہ کی طرف منہ کرنا جیسے قبر میں رکھتے ہیں اور دونوں صورتوں میں سے جو صورت ہو سکے جائز ہے۔ مگر زیادہ مستحسن صورت ثانیہ ہے کیونکہ حدیث میں آیا ہے کہ "خانہ کعبہ قبلہ ہے زندوں کا بھی اور مردوں کا بھی"۔ (امداد الفتاویٰ، جلد اول)۔

1. A bench, stand or platform on which the Ghusl will be carried out must be washed, cleaned and fumigated with Lobaan or any other Paak aromatic, three, five or seven times.
2. During GHUSL, it is PERMISSIBLE to place the body in one of the following two positions :



QIBLA

WHICHEVER POSITION IS CONVENIENT, IS PERMISSIBLE.



However, it is preferable to place the body with the FACE towards the QIBLAH as NABI (ﷺ) has mentioned that the Kaba is the Qiblah of both, the living and the dead.

3. NO HAIR of the head, beard or any other part of the body must be cut, shaved, trimmed or combed. The nails too should NOT be cut. Circumcision is also NOT permissible. All rings, jewelery, wigs etc., should be removed. Where the false teeth of the dead person can easily be removed, these should preferably be taken out.
4. Thereafter the body should be put on the stand, the SATR (private parts) covered. (The male's Satr is from the navel to the knees, and the female's is from above the breast to the ankles.)
5. The stomach should be gently massaged, then both the Istinja places should be washed with mittens on, without looking at the private parts.
6. The nostrils, ears and mouth should be closed with cotton wool to prevent water from entering the body during the Ghusl.
7. If the deceased has reached the age of puberty, and was one on whom Namaaz was Farz, he must be given WUDHU. This Wudhu is similar to that of Namaaz, with the exception of GARGLING and

putting water into the NOSTRILS. The proper sequence should be to wash :

- ◆ The FACE.
- ◆ ARMS to the ELBOWS.
- ◆ MASAHA of the HEAD and
- ◆ FEET up to the ANKLES.

8. If the dead person is in the state of JANAABAT, HAIZ or NIFAAS, (a state in which GHUSL is WAAJIB on him/her), then the mouth HAS TO be gargled and nostrils be made wet. This can be done with a little bit of cotton wool.
9. After Wudhu, the head and beard should first be washed with soap or any other cleaning agent. If these are not readily available, pure clean water will suffice. The temperature of the water must be that which a living person normally uses when bathing.
10. Thereafter the body should be tilted onto its left side to allow the right side to be washed first. Warm water should now be poured over the body from head to the toes once, and the body should be washed with soap until the water has reached the bottom, (left side). The body should now be washed again twice by pouring water from head to toe. The body should then be turned onto its right side and the left side bathed similarly.
11. Thereafter the body should be lifted slightly to a sitting position, and the stomach be gently massaged with a downward stroke. Whatever comes out of the body should be washed away. The WUDHU and GHUSL need NOT be REPEATED in case any dry impurity comes out.
12. The body should since again be turned onto its left side and camphor water poured over it from head to three times.
13. All the cotton wool should now be removed from the mouth, ears and nose.
14. With this, the Ghushl is complete and the body could be wiped with a towel or a piece of material. The SATR must be kept covered. The FIRST Tehband will be wet due to the Ghushl. It should thus be changed for a second one. Care should be taken that while doing this the SATR is NOT exposed.

15. The body should then be wrapped in a sheet and carried carefully onto the Kafn.

MASNOON SEQUENCE OF HOW THE KAFN SHOULD BE PUT ON

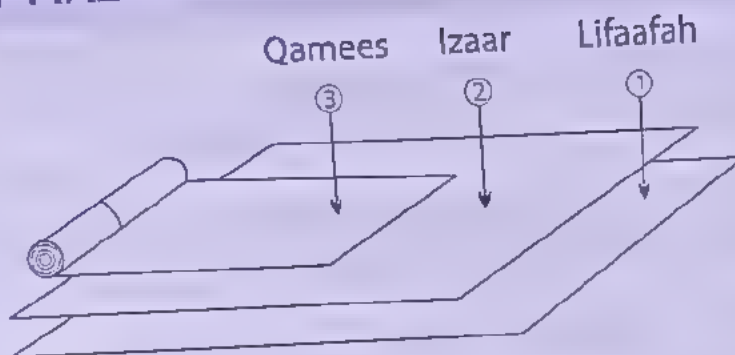
MALE:

1. First spread the LIFAFAH on the floor, then on it the IZAAR and on it that portion of the QAMEES that will be under the body. The portion that will cover the top of the body should be folded and put at the head side.
2. Lower the body gently onto the Kafn and cover the top of the belly upto the calves with the folded portion of the Qamees.
3. Remove the TEHBAND and sheet used for covering the SATR.
4. Rub ITR or HUNOOT on the HEAD and BEARD.
5. Then rub camphor mixture paste on the places of SAJDAH, (ie. those parts of the body that touch the ground in NAMAAZ : forehead, nose, both the palms, knees and the fore feet.
6. First fold the LEFT flap and on it the RIGHT flap of the IZAAR over the QAMEES.
7. Thereafter fold the LIFAFAH in the same manner. Remember that the RIGHT flap must always be on the top.
8. Lastly fasten the ends of the LIFAFAH at the head side, feet and around the middle with strips of the cloth.

FEMALE :

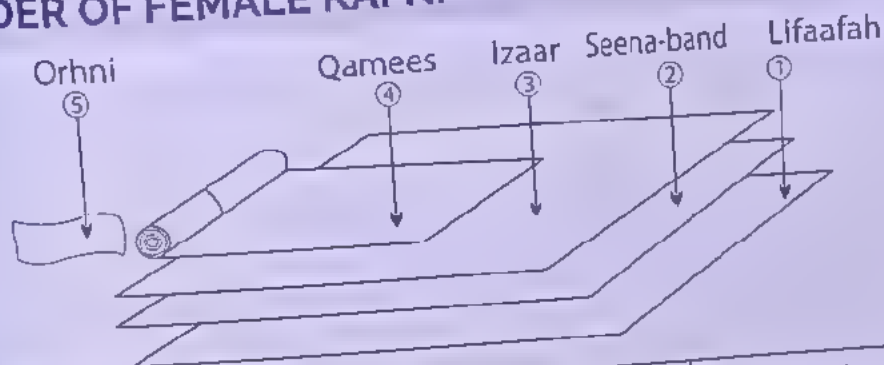
1. First spread the LIFAFAH out on the ground, then the SINABAND, on it the IZAAR and then the QAMEES in the same manner stated for males. The SINABAND may also be placed between the Izaar and Qamees or lastly over the Lifafah.

ORDER OF MALE KAFN:



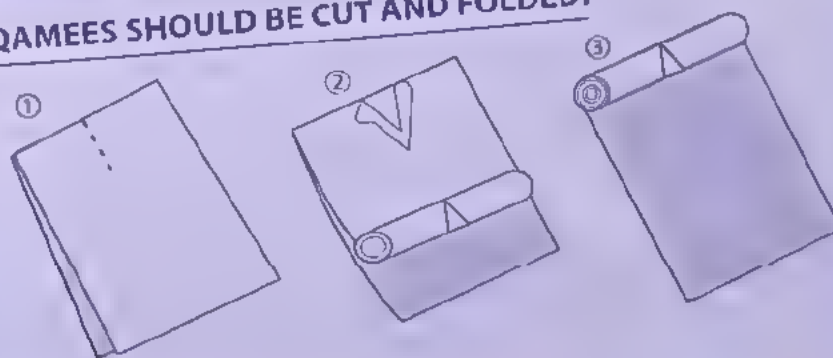
1. Lifaafah (Chaadar)	225 cm (2½ yds)	150cm/180cm (60" / 72")	15 cm longer than Izaar
2. Izaar	180 cm (2 yds)	150cm/180cm (60" / 72")	To cover from head to toe
3. Qamees (Kafni)	180 to 250 cm (2 to 2¾ yds)	90 cm (36")	From shoulder to below the knees

ORDER OF FEMALE KAFN:



4. Sinaband	180 to 250 cm (2 to 2¾ yds)	90cm (36")	From under the arm pits to the thighs.
5. Orhni (Khimaar)	140 cm (1½ yds)	90 cm (36")	To cover head and hair over breast

HOW QAMEES SHOULD BE CUT AND FOLDED:



2. Lower the body gently onto the Kafn and cover the top of the body upto the calves with the folded portion of the Qamees.
3. Remove the Tehband and sheet used for covering the Satr. DO NOT use Itr, Surmah or any other make-up.
4. Rub camphor mixture onto the places of Sajdah i.e. the forehead, nose, both palms, knees and the fore feet.
5. The hair should be divided into two parts and put onto the right and left breast over the Qamees.
6. Cover the head and hair with the Orni. Do not fasten or fold it.
7. Fold the Izaar, the left flap first and then the right over the Qamees and Orni.
8. Now close the Sinaband (breast cover) over these in the same manner.
9. Close the Lifafah, the left flap first and then the right.
10. Lastly fasten the ends of the Lifafah at the headside, feet and around the Middle with strips of cloth, to keep the complete Kafn in place.

PROHIBITED ARTICLES IN THE KAFN

1. It is prohibited to enclose any charter or any other Du'aa on the Kafn.
2. It is forbidden to write the Kalimah or any other Du'aa on the Kafn or on the chest of the deceased with camphor, ink, etc.

WHAT TO DO AFTER THE KAFN

With the completion of the Ghusl and Kafn, the Mayyit (deceased person) is ready for DAFAN (burial). No time should be wasted and the Namaaz of the Janaazah should be arranged without delay. Rasulullah (ﷺ) has said:

"If a person passes away, hasten him to his grave and do not keep him away." The Janaazah Namaaz should be arranged quickly and the Mayyit should be buried in the nearest Muslim Qabrastaan (cemetery).

To transport the body over long distances is undesirable. It is also MAKROOH to delay the Janaazah Namaaz and wait for late comers to increase the JAMA'AT.

IMPORTANT :

- ◆ It is only permissible for MAHRAM women of the deceased male to see his face.
- ◆ They are his WIFE, MOTHER, GRAND MOTHER (paternal and maternal), SISTERS, AUNTS and GRAND DAUGHTERS, etc.
- ◆ Similarly only the MAHRAM males should view the face of a deceased female.
- ◆ They are her HUSBAND, FATHER, GRAND FATHER, BROTHERS, UNCLES, SONS and GRANDSONS, etc.

In both cases of a male and female Mayyit, the face of the deceased should NOT be kept OPEN after the Kafn is put on.

It is permissible to recite the Qur'an after the Ghusl has been performed.

HOW THE JANAAZAH SHOULD BE CARRIED

1. If the deceased is an adult, it should be put on a Janaazah (bier) and carried on the shoulders by four men. It is MAKROOH to transport the corpse by hearse over short distances unnecessarily.
2. In the deceased is an infant or small child, it should be carried in the arms individually by different persons.
3. All those who lift or carry the Janaazah should recite BISMILLAH
بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ
4. When carrying Janaazah the Mayyit's head should be towards the front.
5. The MUSTAHAB manner of carrying the Janaazah is that every bearer should carry the Janaazah to FORTH steps. To do this observe the following procedure:
 - ◆ Carry the LEFT FRONT of the Janaazah for TEN steps (the Mayyit's right shoulder).

- ◆ Thereafter the **LEFT REAR** for **TEN** steps, (the Mayyit's right foot)
 - ◆ Then the **RIGHT FRONT** for **TEN** steps, (the Mayyit's left shoulder).
 - ◆ Lastly the **RIGHT REAR** for **TEN** steps, (the Mayyit's left foot.)
- This method should only be adopted if it does **NOT** cause any inconvenience to others.

6. Those accompanying the Janaazah should **NOT SIT** before it is lowered to the ground. The sick and weak are excused.
7. It is **MASNOON** to carry the Janaazah hastily, but **NOT** in manner that the body is **JOLTED** or **SHAKEN** about.
8. It is **MUSTAHAB** to follow the Janaazah, and **NOT** to go **AHEAD** of it.
9. It is **MAKROOH** for those accompanying the Janaazah to recite any Du'aa or Aayat of the Qur'an aloud. They may, however, read La ilaha illallah softly. One should abstain from speaking of **WORLDLY** affairs or laughing and joking.

WHERE SHOULD THE JANAAZAH NAMAAZ BE PERFORMED

This Namaaz should **NOT** be performed in the **MASJID**. It could be performed on any open space or in a building specially built for Janaazah Salaat. It is **IMPORTANT** to remember that when performing Janaazah Salaat in the Qabrastan there should be **NO QABARS** immediately in **FRONT** of the Jam'at. It should be performed as far away from the Qabrs as possible, or there should be an abstraction between the worshippers and the Qabrs.

TIMES WHEN JANAAZAH NAMAAZ COULD BE PERFORMED

It is **MAKROOH** to perform the Janaazah Salaat while the sun **RISES**, when it passes the meridian (**Zawaal**) and when it sets. Besides these **THREE** times, which last for a very short period, this Namaaz could be performed at any time during the day or night. It could also be read after the **ASR** Salaat.

THE JANAAZAH NAMAAZ

The Janaazah Salaat is FARZE KIFAAYAH on all Muslims present. It consist of FOUR TAKBEERS, THANA, DUROOD, and a MASNOON DUA for the deceased and TWO SALAAMS. All these are said SILENTLY by both, the Imaam and Muqtabis. Just the Imaam should call out the Takbeers and Salaam aloud.

THERE ARE TWO FARZ IN JANAAZAH NAMAAZ

- To stand and perform the Salaat.
- To recite all the FOUR Takbeers.

THE MASNOON MANNER OF PERFORMING THE JANAAZAH NAMAAZ

- The body of the Mayyit should be placed with head on the RIGHT side of the Imaam, who will face the Qiblah
- The Imaam should stand in line with the CHEST of the deceased whilst performing the Salaat.
- It is MUSTAHAB to make an odd number of SAFS (rows) The Safs for Janaazah Namaaz should be CLOSE to one another, because there are NO Sajdahs to be made.
- After the Safs are straightened the NIYYAT should be made. The Niyyat should be made thus : *"I am performing this Janaazah Salaat for Allah behind this Imaam."* (The Salaat being a Dua for the Mayyit) After the Niyyah the hands should be raised upto the EARS, and the Imaam should say ALLAHU AKBAR loudly, and the Muqtadis softly. Then fold them under the navel similar to all daily Salaat.
- Then recite THANA softly: پہلی تکبیر کے بعد ہاتھ باندھ کر کہے

THANA

سُبْحَانَكَ اللَّهُمَّ وَبِحَمْدِكَ، وَتَبَارَكَ اسْمُكَ وَتَعَالَى
جَدُّكَ، وَجَلَّ ثَنَّاؤُكَ وَلَا إِلَهَ غَيْرُكَ

sub-haana-kallaa-humma, wa bihamdika, wa tabarakasmuka,
wa ta'aala jadduka wa jalla sanaauka, wa laa ilaah ghairuka.
(Glory be to You Oh Aliah, and praise be to You, and blessed is Your
name, and exalted is your Majesty, and there is none to be served
beside You.)

6. The Imaam will then recite the Takbeer aloud and the Muqtadi softly for the second time. The hands should NOT be raised when saying, this and all subsequent Takbeers. The Durood-e-Ibrahim should now be read :

DUROOD-E-IBRAHIM

اَللّٰهُمَّ صَلِّ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ وَعَلَى آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ، كَمَا صَلَّيْتَ عَلَى
اِبْرَاهِيْمَ وَعَلَى آلِ اِبْرَاهِيْمَ، اِنَّكَ حَمِيْدٌ مُّجِيْدٌ..
اَللّٰهُمَّ بَارِكْ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ وَعَلَى آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ، كَمَا بَارَكْتَ عَلَى
اِبْرَاهِيْمَ وَعَلَى آلِ اِبْرَاهِيْمَ، اِنَّكَ حَمِيْدٌ مُّجِيْدٌ..

Allaahumma Salli 'ala Muhammadin wa 'alaa aali Muhammadin
Kamaa sallayta 'alaa Ibraaheema wa 'alaa aali Ibraaheema,
Innaka Hameedum Majeed. Allaahumma baarik 'alaa
Muhammadin Wa 'alaa aali Muhammadin. Kamaa baarakta
'alaa Ibraaheema wa 'alaa aali Ibraheema, Innaka Hameedum
Majeed.

(Oh Allah! shower Your mercy upon Muhammad (ﷺ) and the
followers of Muhammad (ﷺ) as You showered Your mercy
upon Ibrahim (عليه السلام) and the followers of Ibrahim (عليه السلام), Behold
You are Praiseworthy, Glorious. Oh Allah! snower Your Blessings
upon Muhammad (ﷺ) and the followers of Muhammad
(ﷺ) as You showered Your Blessings upon Ibrahim (عليه السلام)
and the followers of Ibrahim (عليه السلام), Behold You are Praiseworthy,
Glorious.)

7. Thereafter the Takbeer should be said for the THIRD time, and the following Du'aa be recited for an adult male or female:

DU'A

اَللّٰهُمَّ اغْفِرْ لِحَيِّنَا وَمَيِّتِنَا، وَشَاهِدِنَا وَغَائِبِنَا، وَصَغِيرِنَا
وَكَبِيرِنَا، وَذَكَرِنَا وَأُنْثَانَا. اَللّٰهُمَّ مَنْ اَحْيَيْتَهُ مِنَّا فَاحْيِهِ
عَلَى الْاِسْلَامِ، وَمَنْ تَوَفَّيْتَهُ مِنَّا فَتَوَفَّهُ عَلَى الْاِيْمَانِ..

Al-laa hum-magh fir li hay-yi naa, wa may-yi ti naa, wa shaa hi
di naa, wa ghaa-l bi'naa, was a-ghee'ri naa, wa kabee-ri-naa,
wa zha-ka ri-naa, wa unsaa-naa. Al-laa-hum-ma man ah-yay-
ta-hoo min-naa fa-ah yi-hee 'a-lal Islaam. Waman ta-waf fay
ta-hoo min naa fa-ta waf fa hoo 'a-lala eemaan.

(Oh Allah! Forgive those of us that are alive and those of us that are
dead; those of us that are present, and those of us who are absent;
those of us that are young, and those of us that are adults; our males
and our females. Oh Allah! whomsoever of us You keep alive, let him
live as follower of Islam, and whomsoever You cause to die, let him
die a Believer.)

For a child who has not reached the age of puberty the following
Du'aa should be recited after the THIRD Takbeer :

Du'aa for BOY : اگر جنتہ نابالغ لڑکے کا ہو تو یہ دعا پڑھیں :-
اَللّٰهُمَّ اجْعَلْهُ لَنَا فَرَطًا وَّاجْعَلْهُ لَنَا اَجْرًا وَّذُخْرًا وَّاجْعَلْهُ لَنَا
شَافِعًا وَّمُشَفَّعًا..

Al-laa hum-maj 'al-hu la-naa fara-taw, waj-'al-hhu lanaa aj-raw,
wa zhukhraw, waj'al-hu la-naa shaa-fi-'aw, wa mu-shaf-fa-'aa.
(O Allah, make her a means for our salvation, and make her a reward
and treasure for us in the Hereafter, and her an intercessor for us, one
whose intercession is accepted by You.)

Du'aa for GIRL : اگر جنتہ نابالغ لڑکی کا ہو تو یہ دعا پڑھیں :-

اَللّٰهُمَّ اجْعَلْهَا لَنَا فَرَطًا وَّاجْعَلْهَا لَنَا اَجْرًا وَّذُخْرًا
وَّاجْعَلْهَا لَنَا شَافِعَةً وَّمُشَفَّعَةً

Al-laa-hum-maj'al-haa la-naa fara-taw waj-'al-haa la naa aj raw
wa zhukhraw waj' al-haa la-naa shaa-fi 'a-taw wa mu-shaf-fa-'ah.

(Oh Allah! make him/her (this child) a source of our salvation; and make him/her a source of reward and treasure for us; and make him/her an intercessor for us. and one whose intercession is accepted.)

8. The Imaam should say the **FOURTH** Takbeer and thereafter recite the Salaam aloud **TWICE**, while turning his face first towards the **RIGHT** shoulder and then once again while turning his face towards the left. The Muqtadis should follow by saying the Takbeer and Salaam **SOFTLY**.

LATE COMERS TO THE JANAAZAH NAMAAZ

When a **LATE COMER** FEARS that if he engages himself in **WUDHU**, he will miss the Janaazah Salaat, then **ONLY** is it permissible for him to make **TAYAMMUM** and join the **JAMA'AT**. This rule applies to the Janaazah Salaat only.

Whomsoever arrives at the Janaazah Salaat after the Imaam has recited **ONE** or more Takbeers, should wait and join the Imaam when he says the next Takbeer. After the Salaam he should complete the missed Takbeers by merely saying **Allahu Akbar** once for every Takbeer missed. No **Dua** should be read. If the Imaam has completed the **FOURTH** Takbeer then too, the late comer should join and complete all the missed Takbeers, (before the Imaam says the Salaam).

THE SHAR'EE METHOD OF DAFN (BURIAL)

1. After the Janaazah Salaat is performed the Mayyit should be buried as soon as possible. The Janaazah should be carried and placed at the Qiblah side of the grave. The head should be on the **RIGHT SIDE** of the grave if one faces the **QIBLAH**.
2. It is desireable that **MAHRAMS** or close relatives (of a female's Mayyit) should enter the grave to lower the body. The husband should **NOT** enter the grave to bury his wife. It is **NOT MASNOON** (Sunnat) that there be an **ODD** number. All those who enter the grave should face the Qiblah.
3. It is **MUSTAHAB** to hold a sheet over the grave while lowering and burying a female. If there is fear of her Kafan opening, then it is

WAJIB to do so.

4. It is MUSTAHAB for those present to recite this Du'aa whilst the body is being lowered:

میت کو قبلے کی طرف سے قبر میں اتاریں۔ میت کو قبر میں رکھتے وقت یہ دعا پڑھیں:-

بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ وَعَلَىٰ مِلَّةِ رَسُوْلِ اللّٰهِ

(In the name of Allah and on the creed, religion and faith of Rasulullah)

5. After placing the body into recess of the grave it is Masnoon to turn it onto its RIGHT side to face the Qiblah.
6. The strips of cloth tied at the head side, chest and leg side should now be untied.
7. The recess should then be covered with unbaked bricks, bamboo, for timber.

HOW THE QABR SHOULD BE FILLED AND SHAPED

1. It is MUSTAHAB to begin closing the recess or trench from the LEG side for MALES, and from the HEAD side for FEMALES. All the remaining little openings should be closed with mud or grass. The use of any FABRIC or BLANKETS is unnecessary and wasteful.

All those present should participate to fill the QABR with at least THREE handful of soil.

WHILE THROWING THE FIRST HANDFUL IN THE GRAVE RECITE:

پہلی مرتبہ مٹی ڈالتے وقت:-

مِنْهَا خَلَقْنَاكُمْ

(From the (earth) did We create you.)

during the SECOND handful :

اور دوسری مرتبہ:-

وَفِيْهَا نُعِيْدُكُمْ

(and Into It shall We return you).

and at the time of the THIRD handful :

اور تیسری مرتبہ :-

وَمِنْهَا نُخْرِجُكُمْ تَارَةً أُخْرَى

(and from it shall We bring you out once again).

2. It is MAKROOH to add more soil to the QABR than that which was dug out from it.
3. The shape of the Kabr when filled should be like the HUMP of a CAMEL. The height should be approximately 25 to 30 cms. It should NOT be made SQUARE or into any other shape. All types of buildings and enclosure on or around the QABR are NOT permissible. Building on QABR have been emphatically denounced in the Hadith of Rasulullah (ﷺ).
4. It is MUSTAHAB to sprinkle water on the grave from the head to leg side thrice after the QABR has been shaped.
5. To recite the Qur'an and make Du'aa for the deceased at his grave side, after the grave is filled and shaped, is also MUSTAHAB.
6. It has been related by Hazrat UTHMAN (رضي الله عنه) that after Rasulullah (ﷺ) buried the dead, he paused and said: "Beseech forgiveness from Allah for your brother and make Dua for his steadfastness because he is going to be questioned now by the MUNKAR and NAKEER."
7. After the burial, the first Ruku of Suratul Baqarah SHOULD BE READ AT THE HEAD SIDE OF THE QABR :-

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

الَّذِينَ هَدَىٰ لِلْإِيمَانِ ۖ الَّذِينَ يُؤْمِنُونَ بِالْغَيْبِ وَ
يُقِيمُونَ الصَّلَاةَ وَمِمَّا رَزَقْنَاهُمْ يُنْفِقُونَ ۖ وَالَّذِينَ يُؤْمِنُونَ بِمَا أُنزِلَ إِلَيْكَ وَ
مِمَّا أُنزِلَ مِنْ قَبْلِكَ ۖ وَالْآخِرَةُ هُمْ يُوَفَّقُونَ ۖ أُولَٰئِكَ عَلَىٰ هُدًى مِّن رَّبِّهِمْ ۚ
أُولَٰئِكَ هُمُ الْمُفْلِحُونَ ۝

and the last Ruku of Suratul Baqarah SHOULD BE READ
TO THE LEG SIDE:-

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

أَمَّا الرَّسُولُ بِمَا أُنْزِلَ إِلَيْهِ مِنْ رَبِّهِ وَالْمُؤْمِنُونَ كُلٌّ آمَنَ بِاللَّهِ وَمَلَيْكَتِهِ وَ
كُتُبِهِ وَرُسُلِهِ لَا نُفَرِّقُ بَيْنَ أَحَدٍ مِنْ رُسُلِهِ وَقَالُوا سَبِّحْنَا وَاعْبُدْنَا غُفْرَانَكَ
رَبَّنَا وَإِلَيْكَ الْمَصِيرُ ٥ لَا يُكَلِّفُ اللَّهُ نَفْسًا إِلَّا وُسْعَهَا لَهَا مَا كَسَبَتْ وَعَلَيْهَا مَا
اَكْتَسَبَتْ رَبَّنَا لَا تَأْخُذْنَا إِنْ نَسِينَا أَوْ أَخْطَأْنَا رَبَّنَا وَلَا تَحْمِلْ عَلَيْنَا إِصْرًا
كَمَا حَمَلْتَهُ عَلَى الَّذِينَ مِنْ قَبْلِنَا رَبَّنَا وَلَا تُحَمِّلْنَا مَا لَا طَاقَةَ لَنَا بِهِ وَاعْفُ
عَنَّا وَاعْفِرْ لَنَا وَارْحَمْنَا أَنْتَ مَوْلَانَا فَانصُرْنَا عَلَى الْقَوْمِ الْكَافِرِينَ ٦

MASNOON DU'AS THAT MAY BE READ IN THE JANAAZA NAMAAZ

اللَّهُمَّ إِنْ كَانَ مُحْسِنًا فَزِدْ فِي إِحْسَانِهِ وَإِنْ كَانَ مُسِيئًا فَتَجَاوَزْ
عَنْ سَيِّئَاتِهِ . اللَّهُمَّ لَا تَحْرِمْنَا أَجْرَهُ وَلَا تَفْتِنَّا بَعْدَهُ

(O Allah! If he was righteous, then increase his reward, and if he had
erred then pardon his mistakes and deprive us not of his reward, and
try us not after him.)

اللَّهُمَّ اغْفِرْ لَهُ وَارْحَمْهُ وَارْفَعْ دَرَجَتَهُ

(O Allah! Forgive him, and have mercy upon him. And raise his rank.)

اللَّهُمَّ اغْفِرْ لَهُ وَارْحَمْهُ وَعَافِهِ وَاعْفُ عَنْهُ . وَأَكْرِمْ نُزُلَهُ .
وَوَسِّعْ مَدْخَلَهُ . وَاعْسِلْهُ بِالْمَاءِ وَالثَّلْجِ وَالْبَرَدِ وَنَقِّهِ مِنَ
الْخَطَايَا كَمَا يُنْقَى الثَّوْبُ الْأَبْيَضُ مِنَ الدَّنَسِ . وَأَبْدِلْهُ دَارًا
خَيْرًا مِنْ دَارِهِ . وَأَهْلًا خَيْرًا مِنْ أَهْلِهِ . وَأَدْخِلْهُ الْجَنَّةَ وَفِيهِ

فِئْنَةُ الْقَبْرِ وَعَذَابِ النَّارِ

(Oh Allah, Forgive him, Have mercy upon him, Give him peace and absolve him. Receive him honourably and make his grave spacious. Wash him with water, snow and hail. Cleanse him from faults as You cleanse a white garment from impurity. Require him with an abode better than his abode, with a household better than his household. Admit him to Jannat and protect him from the torment of the grave and punishment of the Fire).

اَللّٰهُمَّ اغْفِرْ لَهُ وَاَرْحَمْهُ اِنَّكَ اَنْتَ الْغَفُوْرُ الرَّحِيْمُ

(Oh. Allah! Forgive him, and have mercy upon him, Surely You alone are the Forgiver, the Merciful.)

اَللّٰهُمَّ اَعِذْهُ مِنْ عَذَابِ الْقَبْرِ

(O Allah! Protect him from the punishment of the grave.)

TA'ZIAT

(To Sympathize with the Bereaved)

It is from the teachings of Rasulullah (ﷺ) that one should console and comfort a Muslim who is in distress. Rasulullah (ﷺ) has said: "He who consoles the one in distress shall be rewarded as much as the bereaved."

ONE SHOULD TAKE NOTE OF THESE FEW POINTS:

- ◆ One should be most HUMBLE.
- ◆ Express his GRIEF.
- ◆ Speak less about WORLDLY affairs.
- ◆ Should NOT joke or laugh.
- ◆ Mention the good acts and deeds of the deceased and abstain from the ill ones.
- ◆ Rasulullah (ﷺ) has said: "Mention the GOOD actions of your deceased and abstain from the OFFENSIVE ones."

The time for TA'ZIAT extends for THREE days after the death. It is MAKROOH to make TA'ZIAT after this period, except in cases where

one is NOT present at the Janaazah or when the bereaved is absent. Ta'ziat before the burial is permissible.

VISITING THE QABRASTAN

Rasulullah (ﷺ) has mentioned: "Visit the graves, for surely visiting the graves lessens worldly love and reminds you of the hereafter."

The Qabristan could be visited on any day. Friday is preferred to this visit, and if possible it should be weekly visit. It has been related in a Hadith that: "Whoever will visit his parents' grave every Friday will be granted Maghfirat and he will be recorded as an obedient son of his parents."

WHAT TO READ WHEN ENTERING THE QABRASTAN

Rasulullah (ﷺ) has taught the Sahabah (رضي الله عنهم), these words as salutation to the people of the graves and pray for their forgiveness:

السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكُمْ أَهْلَ الدِّيَارِ مِنَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ وَالْمُسْلِمِينَ
وَإِنَّا إِنشَاءُ اللَّهِ بِكُمْ لَاحِقُونَ ط نَسْتُلُ اللَّهَ لَنَا وَلَكُمْ
الْعَافِيَةَ ط

سلام ہو تم پر اس جگہ آرام کرنے والے مومنوں اور مسلمانوں اور ہم انشاء اللہ تم سے ملنے والے ہیں،
اور ہم اللہ تعالیٰ سے اپنے اور تمہارے لیے عافیت یعنی سکون کی دعا کرتے ہیں۔

(Peace be upon you. O you of the believers and Muslims dwelling in these abodes. Behold If Allah wills, we shall meet you. We beseech of Allah safely for us and for you.)

WHAT TO RECITE WHEN IN THE QABRASTAN

There are many supplications that may be read at the grave side, the best being the recital of the Holy Qu'ran stand facing the grave (back towards the Qiblah) and recite as much of the Qur'an as possible and

make Du'aa for the Maghfirat (forgiveness) of the departed. A few ways of praying for the dead, as related in the AHAADEES, are given hereafter.

◆ Recite Surah IKHLAAS (11 times) قُلْ هُوَ اللَّهُ أَحَدٌ

It is related in a Hadith that whomever visits the Qabrastan and recites Surah IKHLAAS 11 times and then prayed for the dead will be rewarded as many fold as the number of dead in the Qabrastan.

It has been reported in a Hadith that whoever visits the Qabrastan and recites SURAHS:

◆ Surah FAATIAH : اَلْحَمْدُ لِلّٰهِ رَبِّ الْعَالَمِينَ

◆ Surah IKHLAAS : قُلْ هُوَ اللَّهُ أَحَدٌ

◆ Surah TAKAASUR : اَلْهَيْكُمُ التَّكْوِيْنُ

and then prays for the dead, the people of the grave will also ask Allah for such a person's forgiveness.

◆ Recite Surah YASEEN. سورہ یسین

In a Hadith it is reported that if a person recites Surah YASEEN in the Qabrastan, the punishment of the dead will be eased, and the reciter will be rewarded just as much as the dead.

In this manner the Sahaaba of Rasulullah (ﷺ) visited the Qabrastan. The words in the Hadith indicate only salutations and Du'as for the dead and remembering death. All other way; such as placing wreaths, flowers, paying homeage, etc., are INCORRECT according to the SHARI'AT. One should thus abstain from acting wrongly.



PERIOD OF IDDAT

1. The period of WAITING after one's HUSBAND dies, is called IDDAT. This period is of FOUR months and TEN days.
2. During this period she should remain in the dwelling that they occupied at the time of the death of her husband. She is NOT allowed to leave this house if she has sufficient provision. If she is the sole bread winner with no other means of income, then only is she permitted to leave her house during the day. At night she should return to his house.
3. The widow that is expecting a child at the time of the death of her husband, her Iddat will be until the birth of that child. The four month and ten days should NOT be reckoned in this instance.
4. If a woman is NOT at home at the time of her husband's death, she should return as soon as possible and pass the period of Iddat at home. The days of Iddat will be calculated from the time of the demise.
5. A woman in Iddat should abstain from using fancy clothing, make-up or jewellery.

A FEW NOTEWORTHY MASAA'IL

- ◆ The trustee of the deceased should pay all the DEBTS as soon as possible.
- ◆ Isaale Thawaab for the deceased should be made by feeding the poor, by giving Sadaqah, making Istighfaar etc. No SPECIFIC dates or days such as the third, seventh, eleventh or fourteenth are mentioned in Shari'ah for such devotions. When giving charity on behalf of the deceased, it is desirable to make Niyyah for the fulfilment of Qaza Salaat of the deceased.
- ◆ The Shari'at has NOT specified any particular type or colour of clothing that should be worn by those that are bereaved.
- ◆ The Mayyit is one who was born ALIVE and then passed away. It must be named and Ghusl, Kafn and Janaazah must be performed.

- ◆ A STILL BORN child should be named, given Ghusl and wrapped in a piece of cloth, (NO Kafn) and then buried.
- ◆ In the case of a miscarriage, if the limbs are formed, then too, it will be named, given Ghusl, wrapped in a piece of cloth and buried, just as a still born child.
- ◆ There is NO Janaazah Salaat for still born babies.
- ◆ If the limbs are NOT formed, no name will be given and there will be NO Ghusl. The malformed child should just be wrapped in a piece of cloth and buried.
- ◆ If any one of the parents of a dead child is a Muslim, then that child will be regarded as a Muslim. Janaazah Salaat should be performed for that child.
- ◆ Janaazah Salaat shall be said for a person that has committed suicide. It is desirable that someone other than the appointed Imaam or reputable person of the community lead this prayer. Janaazah Salaat will be performed for all Muslims; pious or sinful.
- ◆ It has been narrated by Hazrat Abu Hurairah (رضي الله عنه) that Rasulullah (صلى الله عليه وسلم) said : "One that accompanies the Janaazah of a Muslim with sincerity and with the intention of Sawaab, and remains with it until the Salaat is performed and the Mayyit buried, will return (home) with TWO Qeeraat Saab. Of these, one Qeeraat is equal to the mountain of UHUD. A person who only performed the Janaazah Salaat and returns, will return with one Qeeraat Sawaab"
- ◆ Women do NOT follow the Janaazah nor do they visit the Qabrastan.



QUESTIONS

1. Explain the term MUHTADAR.
2. How should a Muhtadar be made to lie (the Sunnat method)?
3. If possible, which Surahs should be recited in the presence of the Muhtadar?
4. What is Talqeen?
5. What are the signs of a person nearing his end?
6. Mention the ten important things to be carried out after a person has passed away.
7. What are the requirements for a male and female Kafn.
8. What are the requirements for the Qabr?
9. Draw sketches and explain the two different types of Qabrs.
10. Is it (Makrooh, Haraam, Mustahab) to have ones grave prepared during ones lifetime?
11. Write down all the requirements for Ghusl.
12. If there are no women, can the husband perform the Ghusl of his wife?
13. How should the Kafn be put on for the male?
14. Is it permissible to include any Du'a, Aayat or any other charter in the Kafn?
15. Is it permissible for Ghair Mahram women to see the face of any male?
16. Can the Janaazah Salaat be performed in the Masjid?
17. Janaazah Salaat is the (Farze Ain, Farze Kifayah, Sunnat) on all Muslim males.
18. Mention the Farz of Janaazah Salaat.
19. How should late comers join and complete the Janaazah Salaat?
20. How should the Qabr be shaped?
21. What is Ta'ziat?
22. What are the points to be noted during Ta'ziat?
23. Is it necessary to set aside a specific day to visit the Qabrastan?
24. Mention the Surahs preferable to be recited at the Qabrastan.
25. What is IDDAT and what is the period of Iddat?
26. Who is a Mayyit? Is a still born child called a Mayyit? Should it be given Ghusl?

Note

تَعْلِيمُ الْحَقِّ
Ta'leemul Haq

روزہ کا بیان

Saum
(Fasting)

11

روزوں کے اہم مسائل

SAUM (FASTING)

1. Fasting in the month of RAMADHAAN is one of the five pillars of Islam.
2. Fasting in the month of Ramadhaan is FARZ upon every Muslim, male and female who is sane and mature.
3. Almighty Allah has promised great reward for those that fast, whilst severe punishment is in store for those that do NOT fast in the month of Ramadhaan
4. Fasting has many physical, moral and special benefits. However, Allah has made fasting compulsory so that we become pious, God fearing and God conscious.
5. Fasting in ISLAM means to stay away from EATING, DRINKING and COHABITATION from Subha Sadiq (early dawn) to sunset with a Niyyat of ROZAH (fasting).

TYPES OF FAST

There are EIGHT types of ROZAH. They are as follows :

1. **FARZE MUAIIYYAN:** Fasting for the whole month of Ramadhaan once a year.
2. **FARZ GHAIK MUAIIYYAN:** The duty upon one to keep QAZAA of a Rozah missed in the month of Ramadhaan with or without a valid reason.
3. **WAJIB MUAIIYYAN:** To vow to keep a fast on a specific day or date for the sake of Allah, upon the fulfillment of some wish or desire. (NAZR).
4. **WAJIB GHAIK MUAIIYYAN:** To vow or pledge to keep a fast without

fixing any day or date upon the fulfillment of a wish (Nazr). Those Rozahs which are kept for breaking one's Qasm (oath) also fall under this category.

5. **SUNNAT:** Those Rozahs which Rasulullah (ﷺ) kept and encouraged others to keep, eg. fasting on the 9th and 10th of Muharram, the 9th of Zil Hijjah, etc.
6. **MUSTAHAB:** All fasts besides Farz, Wajib and Sunnat are Mustahab, e.g., fasting on Mondays and Thursdays.
7. **MAKROOH:** Fasting ONLY on the 9th or 10th of Muharram or fasting ONLY on Saturdays.
8. **HARAAM:** It is Haraam to fast on FIVE days during the year. They are EIDUL-FITR, Eidul Adha and three days after Eidul Adha.

THE NIYYAT OR INTENTION

1. The Niyyat (intention) of fasting is NECESSARY. If a person stays away from all those things that break one's fast without a Niyyah, the fast will NOT be valid.
2. It is NOT necessary to express the Niyyat verbally as Niyyat means to intend. Thus, the intention at heart will suffice. However, it is better to express the Niyyat verbally also.

نیت روزے کی

صبح صادق یعنی سحری کے آخری وقت سے پہلے پہلے دل میں یہ ارادہ کرے کہ
”کل میں اللہ تعالیٰ کے واسطے روزہ رکھوں گا۔“

بِصَوْمٍ غَدٍ نَّوَيْتُ

Bisaumi Ghadin-Nawaitu

(I intend to keep the fast for tomorrow)

3. The time for Niyyat lasts upto midday for Farze Muaiyyan, Wajib Muaiyyan, Sunnat or Mustahab fasts. The hours of a day are from Subha Saadiq to sunset.

4. The Niyyat for Farze Ghair Muaiyyan and Wajib Ghair Muaiyyan should be made before Subha Saadiq.

DU'AA AT THE TIME OF BREAKING FAST

روزہ افطار کرنے کی دعاء

اَللّٰهُمَّ لَكَ صُمْتُ وَبِكَ اٰمَنْتُ وَعَلٰى رِزْقِكَ اَفْطَرْتُ

Allaahumma laka sumtu wa bika aamantu wa 'ala rizqika aftartu

اے اللہ میں نے خاص تیرے لیے روزہ رکھا اور تجھ پر ایمان لایا اور تیرے دیے ہوئے رزق سے افطار کیا

(O Allah! I fasted for You and I believe in You and I break my fast with Your sustenance.)

MUSTAHABS IN FASTING

1. To partake of SEHRI (the meal before Subha Sadiq).
2. To delay the Sehri upto a little before Subha Sadiq.
3. To break the fast immediately after sunset.
4. To break one's fast with dry or fresh dates if available. If dates are not available, then with water.
5. To make Niyyat at night.

THINGS MAKROOH WHILE FASTING

1. To chew gum, rubber, plastic items or other such things.
2. To taste any article of food or drink and spit it out. If a woman has a very ill-tempered husband, it is permissible for her to taste the food, provided it does not go down the throat.
3. To collect one's saliva in the mouth and then swallow it, trying to quench thirst.
4. To delay a bath that has become FARZ knowingly until after Subha Sadiq.

5. To use paste or tooth powder to clean one's teeth. It is permitted to clean with a miswaak of any fresh branch or root (tooth stick).
6. To complain of hunger and thirst.
7. To take the water too much up the nostrils when cleaning the nose.
8. To gargle more than necessary.
9. To quarrel, argue, use filthy or indecent words.
10. To backbite, tell a lie and swear etc. are sinful acts even when one is not fasting. Therefore they become even worse when fasting.

THINGS THAT BREAK ONE'S FAST

Things that break one's fast are of two kinds. Some make only Qaza necessary, whilst others make both QAZA and KAFFAARAH compulsory.

a) **QAZA**: To keep one fast in place of the one that breaks, or is broken intentionally.

b) **KAFFARAH**: To keep one fast after another for sixty days CONTINUOUSLY.

However, if a person is unable to keep these 60 Rozas, for some valid reason, e.g. continuous sickness, then one has the option of choosing from one of the following four :

1. Feed sixty poor people to their full for two meals, or
2. Feed one poor person two meals a day, for sixty days ; or
3. Give 60 poor persons 3½ lbs. (approx. 1.6kg. of wheat, or its value in cash or food grains ; or
4. Give to one poor person not less than 3½ lbs. of wheat, rice or food grains, etc. to its value of cash for SIXTY days.

THINGS THAT BREAK ONE'S FAST BUT MAKE ONLY QAZA WAJIB

1. Anything put by force into the mouth of fasting persons

2. Water goes down the throat whilst gargling, conscious of one fasting.
3. To vomit mouthful Intentionally or to return vomit down the throat.
4. Swallowing Intentionally a pebble, piece of paper or any item that is not used as food or medicine.
5. Swallowing something edible, equal to or bigger than a grain of gram which was stuck between the teeth. However if it is first taken out of the mouth and swallowed, it will break the fast whether it is smaller or bigger than the size of a gram.
6. Putting oil into the ear.
7. Inhaling snuff (tobacco) into the nostrils.
8. Swallowing the blood from the gums if the colour of the blood is more than the saliva with which it is mixed.
9. To eat and drink forgetting that one is fasting and thereafter thinking that the fast is broken, to eat and drink again.
10. To eat and drink after Subha Sadiq or to break the fast before sunset due to cloudy sky or a faulty watch, etc., and then realising one's fault.

Note: Any other fast other than the one in Ramadhaan, whether broken intentionally or with a good and valid reason, makes **ONLY Qaza WAJIB**. There is **NO Kaffarah** for breaking any fast besides that of Ramadhaan.

THINGS THAT MAKE BOTH QAZA AND KAFFARAH WAJIB

1. Eating, drinking or breaking the fast in any other manner, i.e., smoking, etc., without a valid reason, will make both Qaza and Kaffarah necessary.
2. Applying SURMA into the eye or rubbing oil on the head and then, thinking that the fast is broken, to eat and drink intentionally.
3. To drink any kind of medicine intentionally.

(Note: INJECTION is permitted.)



THINGS THAT DO NOT BREAK THE FAST

1. To eat or drink something unintentionally.
2. A mosquito, fly or any other object going down the throat unintentionally.
3. Water entering the ears.
4. Dust or dirt going down the throat.
5. Swallowing one's OWN saliva.
6. Taking an injection.
7. Applying of Surma (kohl) Into the eyes.
8. Taking a bath to keep cool.
9. Rubbing oil onto the body or hair.
10. To vomit unintentionally.
11. Applying ltr or perfume. It is NOT permitted to inhale the smoke of Lobaan or Agar Batti whilst fasting. It is also NOT permitted to smoke cigarettes or inhale its smoke.
12. Brushing the teeth without tooth paste or powder, eg., using a Miswaak, etc.
13. A dream which makes Ghusl WAAJIB (necessary) does NOT break the Rozah.

PEOPLE EXEMPTED FROM FASTING IN RAMADHAAN

1. Sick people when their health is likely to be badly affected by fasting. They should make up the loss, a day for a day, when they recover after Ramadhaan.
2. A Musafir, (one who is undertaking a journey of more than 77 kms and does NOT intend staying more than 14 days at his destination). However, it is better for him to fast in Ramadhaan than keep Qaza later, provided the journey is NOT a tiresome one.
3. If it is feared that hunger or thirst will lead to death, it is permitted to break one's fast.
4. It is WAJIB to keep Qaza of a NAFL fast that was broken before

completing it.

FIDYA (COMPENSATION) FOR FAST

1. A very old person who does NOT have the strength to fast or a very sick or diseased person who has NO hope of recovering after Ramadhaan, should give FIDYA for each fast missed in Ramadhaan.
2. The Fidyah for a fast is similar to that of a missed Farz or Wajib Salaat, i.e.:

1. To give $3\frac{1}{2}$ Lbs = approx. 1.6 kg. of wheat OR

7 lbs = approx. 3.2 kg of barley

2. OR....the equivalent of the above in cash or kind.

◆ If, however, an old or sick person gains strength or recovers after Ramadhaan, he must keep the missed number of fasts and whatever was given as Fidyah will be a reward for him from Allah Ta'ala.

◆ No one is allowed to fast for another (sick or fit) person.

N.B. Children should be encouraged to fast, but should not be forced to complete the fast upto sunset if they are unable to bear the hunger or thirst.



I'TIKAAF

I'TIKAAF means to enter the Masjid with the Niyat of residing therein.

(MUTAKIF: One who makes I'TIKAAF)

TYPES OF I'TIKAAF: WAJIB, SUNNAT, MUSTAHAB

WAJIB:

To vow or pledge to make I'TIKAAF (on fixed day) for the sake of Allah upon the fulfilment of some wish or desire. The least duration of a WAJIB I'tikaaf is one day and night and it must be accompanied by a fast.

SUNNAT-E-MUAKKADAH:

To reside the last ten nights and days of Ramadhaan in the Masjid is SUNNATE MUAKKADAH ALAL KIFAYAH, ie. If a person from the community fulfils the obligation of I'tikaaf the entire community will be absolved of this sacred duty. Otherwise all the residents will be sinful of neglecting this SUNNAT of our NABI (ﷺ).

MUSTAHAB OR Nafl:

This I'tikaaf can be for any amount of time, even for a few minutes.

No fast (Roza) is conditional for MUSTAHAB or NAFL I'lkaaf.

CONDITIONS OF I'TIKAAF

1. Islam
2. Sane, ie. a person should not be mad.
3. Taharat, to be free from HADASE AKBAR.
4. NIYYAT, Intention.

THINGS PERMITTED DURING I'TIKAAF

1. Eating.
2. Sleeping.
3. Discussing matters of Deen or necessary talk.
- ◆ It is MAKROOH to observe complete silence as a form of IBADAT (Worship).

ONE IS PERMITTED TO LEAVE THE MASJID

1. For WAJIB GHUSL.
2. For Wudhu.
3. To follow the call of nature (toilet).
- ◆ LEAVING THE MASJID without a valid Shar'ee reason will nullify the I'tikaaf.

THINGS TO DO DURING I'TIKAAF

1. A Mu'takif should engage himself in Ibaadat.
2. Recital of Holy Quraan.
3. NAFL Salaat and Zikr.
4. Durood Sharief and Istighfaar.
5. Remembrance of Allah Ta'ala.
6. Learn or teach the knowledge of deen.

A woman should perform I'tikaaf in her home at the place where she performs her daily Salaat or any suitable place.

NIYYAH FOR NAFL I'TIKAAF

نَوَيْتُ الْإِعْتِكَافَ لِلَّهِ عَزَّ وَجَلَّ مَا دُمْتُ فِي الْمَسْجِدِ

(I intend making I'tikaaf for Allah till I remain in the Masjid.)

TARAWEEH

- ◆ Taraweeh Salaat is SUNNATE MU'AKKADAH for both, men and women.
- ◆ To perform Taraweeh with Jama'at is SUNNATE KIFAYAH for men.
- ◆ If a person performs Taraweeh at home whilst Taraweeh is being performed at the Masjid, he will NOT be sinful. However, if all the neighbours perform their Taraweeh alone at home, then all will be sinful because of neglecting the Jama'at.
- ◆ The time for Taraweeh is from after Esha Salaat to a little before Subha Sadiq. It can be performed before and after the Witr Salaat also.
- ◆ If one has missed a few Rak'aats of Taraweeh and the Imaam has commenced the Witr, then this Muqtadi may join for the Witr and complete the remainder of his Taraweeh thereafter.
- ◆ 20 Rak'aats with 10 Salaams are MASNOON, i.e. one should have a Niyat for 2 Rak'aats of Taraweeh each time. After every four Rak'aats it is Mustahab to sit a while and take a rest.
- ◆ One may remain silent or recite the Quran Sharif or Tasbeeh in a low voice or say Nafl Salaat separately during the period of rest after every four Rak'aats.
- ◆ It is MAKROOH to perform Taraweeh sitting if one has the strength of Qiyam (standing).
- ◆ While performing Taraweeh some do not join the Jama'at from the beginning but join the Imam when he prepares to go into Ruku. This is MAKROOH. They should join at the beginning.
- ◆ If one does NOT get the Jama'at for Farz, he should perform his Farz alone and then join the Jama'at for a Taraweeh.

VIRTUES OF FASTING

1. Hazrat Abu Huraira (رضي الله عنه) reported that the Apostle of Allah (صلى الله عليه وسلم) said: "When Ramadhan comes, the doors of Hell are closed, and the devils are put in chains and the doors of Mercy are opened."
2. The Prophet Muhammad (صلى الله عليه وسلم) said: "The fragrance of the mouth of a fasting person is more pleasant to Allah than the smell of musk".
3. Hazrat Sahl bin Saud (رضي الله عنه) reported that Rasulullah (صلى الله عليه وسلم) said: "In Paradise there are eight doors of which there is a door named RAYYAAN. None but those that fast will enter it".
4. Hazrat Abu Hurairah (رضي الله عنه) reported that Rasulullah (صلى الله عليه وسلم) said: "Whoever breaks fast on one day of Ramadhan without excuse or illness, his fasting of his whole age will not compensate it."
5. Hazrat Anas (رضي الله عنه) reported that the Messenger of Allah (صلى الله عليه وسلم) said: "Partake of Sehri before dawn, because in this Sehri there is Barakat (blessing)."
6. Hazrat Abu Hurairah (رضي الله عنه) reported that the Messenger of Allah (صلى الله عليه وسلم) said: "Whoever fasts during Ramadhan with faith and is hopeful of reward, all his past sins will be forgiven, and whoever stands up in Namaaz with faith and is hopeful of reward, all his past sins will be forgiven, whoever stands up in Namaaz during the blessed night with faith and is hopeful of reward, all his past sins will be forgiven."

THERE ARE SIX DUTIES IN FASTING KNOWN AS SUNNATS

1. To partake of Sehri or predawn meals.
2. To break fast immediately after sunset.
3. To perform Taraweeh Salaat at night.
4. To feed the poor and hungry.

5. To increase the reading of the Holy Qur'an.
6. To observe I'tikaaf within the Masjid during the last ten days of Ramadhaan.

FASTING TEACHES SYMPATHY FOR THE HUNGRY

Fasting is the only method whereby the pangs of hunger, the ever present companion of the poor, are experienced by the rich. Thus this experience kindles a spirit of kindness towards the poor and distressed. It also gives rise to the thought of how people will fare on the day of Resurrection, when the greatest urge of hunger and thirst will be felt.

DON'TS OF RAMADHAAN AND AT ALL TIMES

1. Don't speak without purpose.
2. Don't be vulgar or rude.
3. Don't be irritable.
4. Don't tell lies.
5. Don't backbite.
6. Don't argue or fight.
7. Don't be boastful and arrogant.
8. Don't swear.
9. Don't eat doubtful food at IFTAR.
10. Don't look at undersirable things.
11. Don't listen to objectionable speech.
12. Don't gossip.
13. Don't commit any sins.



QUESTIONS

1. Outline the five pillars of Islam.
2. What does fasting mean to a Muslim?
3. Mention the eight different types of fasts.
4. Explain the first four.
5. When is it: a) Sunnat, b) Mustahab, c) Makrooh and d) Haraam to Fast?
6. What will happen if a person did not make an intention to fast?
7. Mention the time for the Niyyat.
8. Mention 3 Mustahabs in Fasting.
9. Mention 6 acts of Makrooh whilst fasting.
10. Things that break one's fast are of _____ types. Mention and explain them.
11. Explain the terms Qaza and Kaffarah.
12. Mention all the items that break one's fast but only make Qaza Waajib.
13. If a person intentionally broke his Sunnat Roza, will Kaffarah become Waajib? If so, Why?
14. Mention the items that make Qaza and Kaffarah Waajib.
15. Mention 7 items that do not break one's Fast.
16. How many types of people are exempted from fasting?
17. Explain the Fidyah for a Fast.
18. If a sick person, who has already given Fidyah, recovers from his illness, what should he do?
19. If a person is sick, can another person fast on his behalf?
20. Mention the 3 types of I'tikaaf.
21. Mention the conditions of I'tikaaf.
22. Which acts are permitted during I'tikaaf?
23. What will happen if a person leaves the Masjid without any valid Shar'ee reason?
24. Where should a woman make I'tikaaf?
25. Taraweeh Namaaz is (Farz, Sunnate Muakkadah, Waajib) for (men only, women only, both).
26. How should one read the Tasbeeh after every four Rak'aats?
27. How is it to perform Taraweeh seated?
28. Mention 3 virtues of Fasting.
29. Mention 4 Sunnats of Fasting.
30. What does fasting teach a Muslim?
31. Mention 7 "Don'ts" of Ramadhaan.



Taleemul Haq

زکوٰۃ کا بیان

Zakaat

ZAKAAT

(OBLIGATORY CHARITY)

IMPORTANCE OF ZAKAAT

Zakaat is a monetary devotion and an Ibaadat that has been ordained in the Shariats of all the Ambiya (Peace be upon them). Zakaat is one of the five pillars of Islam.

Zakaat literally means to increase. Technically it means to purify one's position of wealth by distributing a prescribed amount which has to be given to the poor as a fundamental Ibaadat. Zakaat is not a governmental tax, but its main purpose is to keep those who are wealthy clean monetarily from sins.

Zakaat was made compulsory at Makkah at the same time as Salaat. This can be seen in the Surahs of the Qur'an where the laws of Zakaat are mentioned. The amount, distribution, etc. was defined at Madinah in the second year of Hijri.

THE VIRTUES OF ZAKAAT

Allah Ta'ala says in the Qur'aan;

يَمْحَقُ اللَّهُ الرِّبَا وَيُزِيلُ الصَّدَقَاتِ

"Allah destroys wealth obtained from interest and will give increase for deed of charity". (Surah Baqarah: 276)

Rasulullah (ﷺ) has said;

1. "The nation that does not give Zakaat, Allah will bring about a drought on them (i.e. necessities of life will become scarce)"
2. "The persons on whom Allah has bestowed wealth, and he does

At give Zakaat, on the Day of Qiyaamah, this wealth will turn into a enormous bald serpent which will wind around his neck and bite his neck and say: "I am your wealth, I am your treasure". (Bukhari)

It is stated in the Hadith that by giving Zakaat the following benefits are derived :

1. Gaining the pleasure of Allah.
2. Increase in wealth;
3. Protection from losses;
4. A cause thus established for Allah's forgiveness and blessings are obtained;
5. Safety from calamities;
6. Protection from the wrath of Allah and from a bad death;
7. The Zakaat will provide a shelter on the Day of Judgement;
8. Security from seventy misfortunes;
9. It will serve as a shield from the fires of Jahannam;
10. It contributes to Barkat in wealth.
11. It saves from fear and grief.

There are two major benefits of giving Zakaat:

1. It keeps one away from sin and saves the giver from moral ill arising from the love and greed for wealth;
2. Through Zakaat, the poorer class, (those themselves) are being cared for, such as widows, orphans, the disabled, the poor and the destitute.

THE PUNISHMENT FOR NOT GIVING ZAKAAT

Allah Ta'ala says in the Qur'an :

يَا أَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا إِنَّ كَثِيرًا مِّنَ الْأَحْبَارِ وَالرُّهْبَانِ لَيَأْكُلُونَ أَمْوَالَ النَّاسِ بِالْبَاطِلِ وَيَصُدُّونَ عَنْ سَبِيلِ اللَّهِ وَالَّذِينَ يَكْنِزُونَ الذَّهَبَ وَالْفِضَّةَ وَلَا يَنْفِقُونَهَا فِي سَبِيلِ اللَّهِ فَبِئْسَ لَهُم بِعَذَابٍ أَلِيمٌ (34) يَوْمَ يُخْمَىٰ عَلَيْهَا فِي كَارِ جَهَنَّمَ فَيُكْوَىٰ بِهَا جِبَاهُهُمْ وَجُنُوبُهُمْ وظُهُورُهُمْ هَذَا مَا كَنَزْتُمْ لِنَفْسِكُمْ فَذُوقُوا مَا كُنْتُمْ تَكْنِزُونَ (35)

"And there are those who hoard gold and silver and do not spend it in the way of Allah, announce to them a most grievous penalty (when) on the Day of Qiyaamah heat will be produced out of that wealth in the fire of Jahannam. Then with it they will be branded on their foreheads and their flanks and backs. (It will be said to them) This is the treasure which you hoarded for yourselves, taste then the treasure that you had been hoarding." (Surah Taubah: 34,35)

ON WHOM ZAKAAT IS FARZ

Zakaat is Farz upon a person if:

1. He is a Muslim,
2. He is an adult;
3. He is a sane person;
4. He is a free person - not a slave,
5. He owns wealth intended for trading to the value of Nisaab.

Furthermore the wealth should be

- a) Fully owned by him;
- b) In excess of his personal needs (clothing, household furniture, utensils and cars etc. are termed as articles of personal use);
- c) It should be possessed by him for a complete lunar year;
- d) Of a productive nature from which he can derive profit or benefit such as merchandise for business, gold, silver, live-stock, etc.

- There is no Zakaat on effects that are not of a productive nature even if these are in excess of one's needs, such as cars, utensils, furniture etc. if such items are not intended for trade.

NOTE: Zakaat is Farz. Any person who denies it being Farz (compulsory) loses his Imaan. However if he recognizes Zakaat being Farz but neglects this duty he will be termed a Faasiq (Transgressor).

TYPES OF WEALTH ON WHICH ZAKAAT IS FARZ

1. Zakaat is Farz on gold and silver, be it in the form of bullion, jewellery, cash, bank notes, utensils or any other form. The value of these should be equal to the amount which is shown under Nisaab rate.
2. If the gold possessed is not equal to the value of 87.48 grams, or silver possessed is not equal to the value of 612.36 grams, but the value of both combined is equal to the value of either the Nisaab of gold or silver, then Zakaat will be Farz.
3. In the event of an article of not being of pure gold or pure silver, but containing a mixture of other metals and the gold or silver is regarded as gold or silver and Zakaat on this will be Farz. But in this case where the metal is of greater quantity than either the gold or silver, Zakaat will not be Farz on that article.
4. If a person has 620 grams of silver (which is more than the Nisaab) and before a whole year has elapsed he acquires 50 grams of gold (which is less than the Nisaab), then the value of this gold must be added to the value of the silver, and thereafter the Nisaab reckoned. The two must not be reckoned separately, as this will be a cause of avoiding Zakaat.
5. Zakaat is Farz on merchandise for business, equal to the value of Nisaab.
6. Zakaat is Farz on livestock.
7. Zakaat is Farz on the income of properties if it is equal to the value of Nisaab.
8. Zakaat is Farz on the income derived from a hiring business, such as crockery, motor cars, vans, trucks etc.

TYPES OF WEALTH ON WHICH ZAKAAT IS NOT FARZ

1. Zakaat is not Waajib on any other metal besides gold and silver.
2. Zakaat is not Waajib on fixtures and fittings of a shop, motor car, truck or any delivery vehicle etc., which is used in running a business.
3. There is no Zakaat on diamonds, pearls, other precious or semi-precious stones which are personal use. Zakaat is payable on the gold or silver used in making jewellery with diamonds, pearls etc. There is no Zakaat on imitation jewellery.
4. There is no Zakaat on any number of living quarters, house-hold furniture, crockery, personal clothing, whether they are in use or not. However, Islam does not justify extravagance.
5. There is no Zakaat on a person whose liabilities exceed or equal his assets.
6. A person has R 300, but owes R 200. Zakaat is due on the remaining R100.

ANIMALS ON WHICH ZAKAAT IS FARZ

1. It is compulsory to give Zakaat on camels, cattle, water buffaloes, goats and sheep. (any such Halaal animal that can be slaughtered for Qurbani in terms of Shariat) when they:
 - a) graze on the open field for the greater part of the year and are not stall fed;
 - b) are kept for milk, breeding or fattening. Such animals are termed 'Saa'imah'.
2. Zakaat on Saa'imah animals is calculated on number and not value therefore stud or thoroughbred animals and crossbred animals are treated alike for Zakaat purposes.
3. Where animals are kept for trade, Zakaat will be calculated and given as is done in commercial establishments. (i.e. on the monetary value of each animal). The Nisaab is the same as that of

trading.

4. If one has a mixed flock of goats and sheep and the number of each kind individually makes Zakaat applicable then the Zakaat of each respective group will be given from its own kind.
5. When the number of each type of animal individually does not make Zakaat binding, but the total of both kinds does amount to the Nisaab then Zakaat will be given from the type of animal that is greater in number.
6. If both kinds are equal in number, one has the option of choosing the Zakaat animal from whichever kind he desires. It must be noted that the Zakaat animal should be of a good quality.

ANIMALS ON WHICH ZAKAAT IS NOT FARZ

1. Animals that are stall fed for six months of the year and then left to graze on the field for the remainder of the year are not Saa'imah and thus no Zakaat will be liable on their owner.
2. There is no Zakaat payable on animals which are reared for riding, or for drought purpose or for one's own use or consumption.
3. There is no Zakaat on wild animals.
4. There is no Zakaat on horses, donkeys and mules if they are not for trade.
5. There is no Zakaat on a herd which consists of calves only i.e. until they reach a capable age of breeding. If such a herd has one animal that could be used for breeding, then Zakaat will have to be given on all of them. In this case that particular full grown animal will have to be given as Zakaat. If this animal which is capable of breeding dies, then Zakaat will still be necessary on the rest of the herd of calves.
6. Zakaat is not applicable on sheep that are less than twelve months old.

NISAAB AND RATE OF ZAKAAT

The amount of wealth which makes one liable for Zakaat is called Nisaab.

The payment of Zakaat is compulsory on the excess wealth or assets which is equal to/or exceeds the value of Nisaab, and which is possessed for a full Islamic year. If such wealth decreases during the course of the year, and it increases again to the value of Nisaab before the end of the year, the Zakaat then must be calculated on the full amount that is possessed at the end of the year.

The Nisaab of gold and silver fixed by Rasulullah (ﷺ) is as follows:

NISAAB	Grams	Tolas	Grains	Troy Oz
GOLD 20 Mithqaals	87.48	7.5	1350	2.8125
SILVER 200 Dirhams	612.36	52.5	9450	19.6875

The rate of Zakaat which was fixed by Rasulullah (ﷺ) is 2.5% (1/40) i.e. 2.5 cents in a rand.

THE TIME AND NISAAB OF ZAKAAT FOR LIVESTOCK

1. The owner must have possession of animals for one lunar year before Zakaat becomes Farz.
2. The Nisaab for Saa'imah animals is governed by the number of animals in one's ownership and not by the monetary value of each animal. (refer to tables for detail)

TABLE OF ZAKAAT FOR SHEEP AND GOATS

The Nisaab (minimum number) when Zakaat becomes applicable is forty animals which are more than twelve months old. There is no Zakaat if the number is less than forty.

NUMBER	ZAKAAT
	1 Year old
40-120	1 Animal
121-200	2 Animals
201-399	3 Animals
400	4 Animals

Thereafter for each additional hundred, one sheep that is one year old must be given as Zakaat.

TABLE OF ZAKAAT FOR CATTLE AND WATER BUFFALOES

The Nisaab when Zakaat becomes applicable is thirty animals. There is no Zakaat if the number is less than thirty.

NUMBER	ZAKAAT	
	1 Year old	2 Year old
30-39	1 Animal	
40-59		1 Animal
60-69	2 Animals	

Thereafter, in every thirty animals, one, 1 year old animal should be given; and in every forty, a 2 year old animal should be given as Zakaat.

Example:

NUMBER	ZAKAAT	
	1 Year old	2 Year old
70	1 Animal	1 Animal
80		2 Animals
90	3 Animals	
100	2 Animals	Plus 1 Animal
110	1 Animal	Plus 2 Animals
120	4 Animals	or 3 Animals

THE NIYYAT (INTENTION) OF ZAKAAT

1. It is Farz to form Niyyat for the fulfilment of Zakaat.
2. When giving Zakaat to a needy person, the Niyyat should be that, **"I AM GIVING THIS AS ZAKAAT."** If the Niyyat is not made, the Zakaat will not be valid.
3. It is not necessary to reveal to the needy person to whom Zakaat is given, that the cash or kind which is being given to him is Zakaat.
4. When one has put aside an amount for Zakaat with the intention that he will give it to the needy, and at the time of giving Zakaat he forgets to make the Niyyat, the Zakaat will still be valid.
5. If one gives a deserving person some money as a gift but makes the Niyyat of Zakaat, the Zakaat will be valid.

THE METHOD OF DISTRIBUTING ZAKAAT

1. Zakaat is Farz at the rate of 2.5%.
2. Zakaat should be given as soon as possible after it becomes due. It is possible that death may occur and thus lead to failure in fulfilling one's obligations.
3. A poor man cannot be paid for his work from Zakaat, nor can Zakaat

be given in payment of anyone's services, except when an Islamic government pays salaries to persons appointed by the government to collect Zakaat.

4. Zakaat will only be valid if the recipient is made the owner of that amount.
5. Zakaat cannot be given or used for the construction of a masjid, madrasah, hospital, a well, a bridge or any other public amenity.
6. Poor students can be given a bursary from Zakaat. If the student is of an understanding age, the Zakaat must be given to him personally; and if he is not of an understanding age, then his Shar'i Wakeel (parents or legal guardian) must be given possession of the amount.
7. Zakaat can be paid in kind from the same merchandise on which it is due or alternatively, it could be paid in cash. It is of VITAL importance to ensure at all times that the recipient is made the OWNER of the ZAKAAT.
8. Authority can be delegated to another person or an organization for the distribution of Zakaat in order that it be utilised in accordance with the laws of Zakaat.
9. If a person requests someone to give a certain amount on his behalf as Zakaat, and that sum is given out, then that Zakaat will be valid. The sum given will be a right upon the one who made this request.
10. If an agent is given Zakaat for distribution, and he does not distribute it then the Zakaat will not be regarded as fulfilled, and the sin of not discharging the obligatory duty of Zakaat will remain a burden on whom it was Farz.
11. It is Afdhal (best) to give one's Zakaat when it is due, rather than wait for Ramadhaan.

TO WHOM ZAKAAT CAN BE GIVEN (MASAARIF)

The recipients of ZAKAAT according to the Qur'aan are as follows:

إِنَّمَا الصَّدَقَتُ لِلْفُقَرَاءِ وَالْمَسْكِينِ وَالْغِلَّةِ عَلَيْنَا وَالْمُؤَلَّفَةِ قُلُوبُهُمْ وَفِي
الرِّقَابِ وَالْغَرَمِينَ وَفِي سَبِيلِ اللَّهِ وَالْبَنِي السَّبِيلِ ط قَرِيبَةً مِّنَ اللَّهِ ط وَاللَّهُ
عَلِيمٌ حَكِيمٌ ط

"Zakaat (contributions of cash money, merchandise, animals etc.) are for the poor and the needy; and those who collect them; for those whose hearts are to be reconciled; and to free the captives and the debtors; and for the cause of Allah Ta'ala; and for the wayfarer; A duty ordained by Allah Ta'ala. Allah is All Knowing, Wise." (Surah Taubah: 60)

- ◇ **FUQA'RAA:** People who are poor and who possess more than their basic needs but do not possess wealth equal to Nisaab.
- ◇ **MASAAKEEN:** People who are destitute and extremely needy to the extent that they are forced to beg for their daily food ration.
- ◇ **AL AAMILEEN:** Those persons who are appointed by an Islamic Head of State or Government to collect Zakaat. It is not necessary that this be a needy person.
- ◇ **MU'ALLAFATUL QULOOB:** Those persons that have recently accepted Islam and are in need of basic necessities who would benefit from encouragement by the Muslims which would help to strengthen their faith in Islam.
- ◇ **AR RIQAAB:** Those slaves that are permitted to work for remuneration and have an agreement from their masters to purchase their freedom on payment of fixed amounts.
- ◇ **AL GHAAARIMEEN:** Those persons that have a debt and do not possess any other wealth or goods with which they could repay that which they owe. It is conditional that this debt was not created for any un-Islamic or sinful purpose.
- ◇ **FEE SABEELILLAH:** Those person that have to carry out a Farz deed which has become obligatory on them and subsequently (due to loss of wealth) are unable to complete that Farz.

IMPORTANT: A common misunderstanding about the term "Fee Sabeelillah" (For Allah's sake) has misled many to believe that this includes all types of charitable deeds. The Commentaries of the Qur'an and Ahaadith of Rasulullah (ﷺ) do not support this view.

♦ **IBN US SABEEL:** Those persons who are Musaafirs (travellers in view of Shalrat) and during the course of their journey do not possess basic necessities, though they are well to do at home. They could be given Zakaat in order to fulfill travel needs to return home.

IMPORTANT: All the above mentioned recipients excluding Al Aamileen must be those who do not possess the Nisaab.

1. It is not Jaa'iz (not permissible) in the shariat to give Zakaat to a person who owns merchandise or wealth in excess of his needs to the value of Nisaab nor is it Jaa'iz for such a person to accept Zakaat.
2. A person that does not own an amount equal to the value of Nisaab is known as Faqir. This person could be given Zakaat and it is permissible for him to accept Zakaat.
3. A person owns wealth which in value exceeds the amount of Nisaab, but this wealth is not intended for business nor does he require it for his daily needs. Such a person is regarded as well to do and should not be given Zakaat.
4. The books of a scholar or tools of a tradesman are among his necessities, irrespective of their value. Besides these if he does not own wealth equal to Nisaab he could be given Zakaat.
5. When giving Zakaat, Sadaqah etc. one's poor and needy relatives should be given preference. To avoid embarrassing them it should be given to them without saying that it is Zakaat or Sadaqah.
6. There is great sawaab in giving Zakaat to poor persons who are striving in the way of the Deen or those who are engaged in religious knowledge, or to religious institutions where poor or needy students are being cared for. Care should be taken that only such institutions are given Zakaat where it is used according to the Sharlah.
7. A child of a wealthy father cannot be given Zakaat. When such a child becomes mature in age, and does not own wealth to the value of Nisaab, he may then be given Zakaat.

ZAKAAT CAN BE GIVEN TO A

- a. ♦ brother, sister nephew, niece, (brother's and sister's children,
♦ uncle, aunt, (both paternal and maternal,)
♦ step-grandfather, step-grandmother,
♦ father-in-law, mother-in-law,

Provided They Do Not Possess Nisaab

PERSONS THAT CANNOT BE GIVEN ZAKAAT

1. Zakaat cannot be given to Banu Haashim. The Banu Hashim are all the children of Sayyadatina Faatima ؓ, and all members of Rasulullah Sallahu Alaihi Wa Sallam's family and wives ؓ.
2. Zakaat cannot be given to parents, grandfather etc. In the same manner one's grandfather etc. In the same manner one's children and grandchildren, cannot be given Zakaat, a husband and wife cannot give Zakaat to each other.
3. Zakaat contributions cannot be given to such institutions or organizations who do not give the rightful recipients (Masaarif) possession of Zakaat, but instead use Zakaat funds for construction, investment or salaries.
4. Zakaat cannot be given to non-Muslims. The same ruling applies to Wajib Sadaqah i.e. Sadaqatul Fitr, Kaffaarah, Ushr and Nazr. Nafil Sadaqah could be given to non-Muslims.
5. If one cannot determine whether the recipient is needy or not, then it is better to make certain before giving him Zakaat. If Zakaat is given without inquiry and subsequently it is known that the recipient is wealthy the Zakaat is not valid. It has to be given again.
6. Zakaat will not be fulfilled by purchasing books for an institution, or land purchased for public utility and made Wak'f.
7. Zakaat cannot be used for the Kaf'n of a deceased person who has no heirs, because at that time he/she cannot become the owner.
8. A dead person's debt cannot be paid from Zakaat.

WHEN IS ZAKAAT FARZ ON A CREDITOR

A person is obliged to give Zakaat on money or valuable owing to him, whether it be a loan or a business debt. This applies only if the debtor acknowledges that he owes the amount or promises to pay it; or if on the contrary he refutes the claim, and there are witnesses or documentary proof to support such claim by which it could be recovered through a judiciary. Loans are basically of three types:

1. QAWI (Secure loan)

- a. If cash, gold or silver has been given as a loan or when merchandise has been sold on terms and the payment is received after a year or two; and the value of the amount owing is that of Nisaab, then this is called a Qawi loan, and therefore, Zakat for those years prior to payment will be Farz.
- b. In the case where this loan is repaid in instalments, if the repayment received equals to one fifth (20%) of the Nisaab, Zakaat of this one fifth becomes Farz. If several years have passed, then Zakat must be given for all the past years. Zakat of the past years has to be calculated annually in units, each unit being twenty percent of the Nisaab.

Government bonds are of this category and Zakat has to be paid on recovery of this loan as described above.

- c. If any such loan is not equal to Nisaab then Zakat will not be Farz; but if this loan together with other excess wealth which is in one's possession when combined becomes equal to Nisaab then Zakat will be Farz on the combined total of both amounts.

2. MUTAWASSIT (Insufficiently secure loan)

- a. If a loan is not cash, gold, silver or merchandise (as mentioned in 1.(a) above) but is personal effects sold (old clothes, house-hold items etc.) or is a property which was sold and the value of it is that of Nisaab, then it is called a Mutawassit loan. Thus Zakaat for those year prior to payment will not be Farz.
- b. If this loan is equal to or in excess of Nisaab and is fully recovered after several years, then Zakaat on that amount is not Farz for all

the past years. However, if anyone in such an instance gave Zakaat, then such an act is rewarded by Allah Ta'ala.

- c. In a case where the repayment is made in instalments, then Zakaat will only be Farz if the repayment is equal to Nisaab and is retained for a full Islamic year.
- d. If the instalment received is less than Nisaab, but one is in possession of other wealth on which Zakaat is due (i.e. Nisaab on which a year has elapsed), then this instalment must be added to the wealth, and Zakaat must be given on the total. It is not necessary for a year to pass over this instalment that is received.

3. DHA'EEF (Insecure loan.)

- a. If money owing to one, is not in lieu of cash, gold, silver, merchandise or personal effects or property which is sold; but is due to outstanding inheritance, bequests, Meh'r (dowry), salary etc., then it is called Dha'eef loan.
- b. Zakaat will become Farz when these monies are received and they are equal to or in excess of Nisaab and further they are retained for a full Islamic year. There is no Zakaat for the years that have passed before receiving these amounts.
- c. There is no Zakaat on Provident and Pension funds. Zakaat must only be paid on these amount after they are recieved from such funds provided the amount is equal to or in excess of the Nisaab and is retained for a full Islamic year.

NOTE: Some Ulama have categorized these funds as Qawi or Mutawassit loans, and thus Zakaat becomes obligatory on the contributions for the past year as well. It is therefore advisable that as a precautionary measure Zakaat should be paid for the past years on these as well.

ZAKAAT ON MERCHANDISE

1. Articles that are purchased for resale are referred to as merchandise. The Nisaab for Zakaat on merchandise is the same as that for cash, i. e. if the value of the articles is equivalent to the value of 87.48 grams of gold (7.5 tolas = 1350 grains = 2.8125 troy. ounces) or 612.36 grams of silver (52.5 tolas = 9450 grains = 19.6875 troy

065487 EV p oi Y1522900

© 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc.

tuona sa bogdoyem, erito sula, seardawq inarawq

- a. Stock in trade;

- of the company, and the company's share of the profits.

- c. Cash on hand:

- 100%

- e. Cash at bank;

11. Other _____

9. Fixed deposits: 10,000,000

- Dr. Sundry, outstanding; (when repaid, and if they are equal)

100. Claims: (acknowledged)

- Other savings, household balance: sundry cash.

394 J. H. GILES AND OTHERS

4. Interest should be given on the capital that exists at the end of

5. If a bad debt is recovered and it is equal to or exceeds the N'sa

c. If a shop has various different types of merchandise then the total value

the beginning of the year one has the full Nisaab and during

Halaal and Haraam merchandise and the amount

equal to or exceeds the Nisaab at the end of the year then it will be necessary to give Zakaat.

9. It is customary to write the price paid for the merchandise at stock figures. Zakaat should not be calculated on these stock figures. For Zakaat purpose current purchase value of the merchandise should be calculated.
10. If a few persons are partners in a company and if any one share of the partners is equal to or exceeds Nisaab then it will be necessary for that partner to give Zakaat.
11. Stock for Zakaat purpose must be calculated according to the Islamic (lunar) year.
12. Zakaat is Farz at the ruling price on shares held in a company at the end of every Islamic year. As machinery, land, fixtures and fittings, furniture, buildings etc. are exempt from Zakaat, one is allowed to subtract these from the total assets. This could be obtained from the company's annual report, for example if one has shares worth R 100-00 and the machinery, land etc., are worth 5% of the total assets of the company, then deduct R 5-00 for machinery, land, fixtures and fittings, furniture and buildings (the exempted Zakaat items) thereafter deduct the liabilities of the company proportionately to the percentage of shares held, and the Zakaat must be calculated on the balance.
13. When Zakaat is given on a capital amount once, and thereafter if this same amount remains with the owner till the following year then Zakaat will be due again. Zakaat will be Farz repeatedly after every Islamic year has elapsed.

DECREASE IN WEALTH BY THE END OF THE ISLAMIC YEAR

1. If Zakaat on wealth has not been given at the end of the Islamic year, and all that wealth either gets lost or stolen, then such wealth is exempted from Zakaat. If one deliberately gives away or destroys his wealth then Zakaat still remains Waajib.
2. If after a full Islamic year has elapsed, and incidentally without the niyyat of Zakaat, one gives away all his wealth to charity, then that

amount of wealth is exempted from Zakaat. In a case where he only gives away part of that wealth, then Zakaat will be due on the remainder if it is equal to Nisaab.

NOTE: A person is obliged to pay Zakaat on R 10 000, namely the sum of R 250. He sets aside this amount with a view to paying his Zakaat. The sum of R 250 is thereafter lost or stolen in which event the Zakaat obligation is not discharged. If the Zakaat payer dies after setting aside the sum of R250, it will constitute part of his estate to be transmissible to his heirs.

QUESTIONS

1. Write 5 benefits of giving ZAKAAT?

- a.....
- b.....
- c.....
- d.....
- e.....

2. On whom is ZAKAAT FARZ?

3. Name 3 types of wealth on which ZAKAAT is FARZ?

- a.....
- b.....
- c.....

4. Name 3 types of wealth on which ZAKAAT is not FARZ ?

- a.....
- b.....
- c.....

5. In the following table fill in the number and age of animals that should be paid as ZAKAAT?

Zakaat for Sheep and Goats

NUMBER	AGE	ZAKAAT
40		Animals
200		Animals
201		Animals
		Animals

6. Mention 5 MASAARIF to whom ZAKAAT can be given ?

- a.....
- b.....
- c.....
- d.....
- e.....

7. Name 4 types of people to whom ZAKAAT cannot be given?

- a.....
- b.....
- c.....
- d.....

8. Can ZAKAAT be given to the following ?

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (a) A child..... | (b) Brother..... |
| (c) Madressa (As wages)..... | (d) Student..... |
| (e) Kafn of deceased..... | (f) Non-Muslim..... |
| (g) Father..... | (h) One's own Children..... |

[Faint handwritten notes and stamps are visible in the background.]

the Lord's Day (worship) of each of these days is the worship of Allah desired by Him in His religion. The last of all Hijrah years is the year of the Hajj.

Qurbaneer
Aqueeqah
and
Sadaqatul
Fitr

QUR'ANI MASAAIL

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

لَنْ يَتَنَاَلِ اللَّهُ لُحُومَهَا وَلَا دِمَاؤُهَا وَلَكِنْ يَتَنَاَلُهُ التَّقْوَى مِنْكُمْ

"It is not thoir meat, nor their blood that reaches Allah, It is your plety that reaches Him." [Surah Hajj . 37]

THE FIRST TEN DAYS OF ZUL HIJJAH

Hazrat Ibn Abbas (رضي الله عنه) relates that Rasulullah (صلى الله عليه وسلم) said "On no other days are good deeds more liked by Allah than on these days meaning the first ten days of Zil Hijjah". The Sahaabah (رضي الله عنه) asked: "O Rasulullah (صلى الله عليه وسلم), not even Jihaad in the way of Allah?" Rasulullah (صلى الله عليه وسلم) replied: "Not even Jihaad in the way of Allah, except for that person who goes out to fight with his life and weath and does not return with anything." [Bukhari]

Rasulullah (صلى الله عليه وسلم) said: "On no days is the worship of Allah desired more than in the first ten days of Zil Hijjah. The fast of each of these days is equal to the fast of a whole year, and the Ibaadat (worship) of each of these nights is equal to the Ibaadat of Laylatul Qadr. [Tirmizi & Ibn Maajah.]

It is related from Ibn Abbas (رضي الله عنه) that Rasulullah (صلى الله عليه وسلم) said: "No days are as weighty with Allah and so liked by Him for good deeds than the first ten days of Zil Hijjah. So In these days increasingly read:

- ◆ TASBEEH (Subhanallah) سُبْحَانَ اللَّهِ
- ◆ TAHLEEL (La ilaha illallah) لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ
- ◆ TAHMEED (Al-hamdullillah) الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ
- ◆ TAKBEER (Allahu Akbar) اللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ

THE FAST OF YOWMUL-E-AUFAH

Hazrat Abu Qataadah al-Ansari (رضي الله عنه) relates that Rasulullah (صلى الله عليه وسلم)

was asked about the Saum (fast) on the day of Arafah (i.e. the 9th Zill Hijjah). He said: "It compensates for the minor sins of the past year and the coming year." [Muslim]

Rasulullah (ﷺ) has said: "The most acceptable Du'aa is that which is made on the day of Arafah, and the best Du'aa which the Prophets before me, and I have made is:

لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ وَحْدَهُ لَا شَرِيكَ لَهُ، لَهُ الْمُلْكُ وَلَهُ الْحَبْدُ،
وَهُوَ عَلَى كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيرٌ

Laa ilaaha il-lal-laahu, wah-da-hoo laa sha-ree-ka la-hoo, la-hul mulku wa la-hul hamdu, yun-yee wa yumee-tu, bi ya-dihul khairu, wa hu-wa 'a-laa kul-li shay-in qadeer.

اللہ کے سوا کوئی معبود نہیں، وہ اکیلا ہے، اس کا کوئی شریک نہیں، اسی کا ملک ہے اور تمام تعریفیں اسی کے لیے ہیں اور وہ ہر چیز پر قدرت رکھنے والا ہے۔

(There is no Deity besides Allah, He is alone. He has no partner. To Him belongs the sovereignty, and unto Him belongs all praise, and He is all-powerful.) [Tirmizi]

It is related that Rasulullah (ﷺ) said: "Whoever stays awake and make Ibaadat on the nights of EIDUL-FITR and EIDUL-ADHAA, his heart will not die on the day when all the hearts will be dead."

Hazrat Muaaz Ibn Jabal (رضی اللہ عنہ) relates that Rasulullah (ﷺ) said: "Jannat is Waajib for those who stay awake with the intention of making Ibaadat on the following nights: 8th, 9th and 10th of Zil Hijjah, the night of EIDUL-FITR and the night of the 15th of Sha'baan." [Targheeb].

THE IMPORTANCE OF QUR'AN

1. It is not their meat, nor their blood that reaches Allah. It is your plety that reaches Him: QURAN.
2. It is related from Hadrat Ayesha (رضی اللہ عنہا) that Rasulullah (ﷺ) has said: "There is nothing dearer to Allah during the days of Qurbani than the sacrificing of animals. The sacrificed animal shall come on the day of Qiyamah with its horns, hair and hooves (to be weighed in Sawaab). The sacrifice is accepted by Allah before the

blood reaches the ground. Therefore sacrifice with an open and happy heart."

3. Hadrat Zaid Ibn Arqam (رضي الله عنه) relates that the companions of Rasulallah (ﷺ) asked: "O Rasulallah what is Qurbani?" He replied: "It is the Sunnah of your father Ibrahim." They asked again: "What benefit do we get from it?" He answered, "A reward for every hair of the sacrificed animal." "And what reward is there for animals with wool? they asked. "A reward for every fibre of the wool," replied the Holy Prophet (ﷺ).
4. Rasulallah (ﷺ) has said: "The person who makes Qurbani with a willing heart and with the niyyat of Sawaab, then on the day of Judgement that Qurbani will shield him from the fires of Hell." Every Muslim should take advantage of this opportunity and sacrifice as many animals as he can afford. The wealthy should make Nafil Qurbani for Rasulallah (ﷺ), his Ummat, and for their own living or deceased relatives. Permission for Nafil Qurbani is not necessary.

WARNING FOR THOSE WHO IGNORE QURBANI

There is a tradition related from Hazrat Abu Hurairah (رضي الله عنه) that Rasulallah (ﷺ) said that the person who has the means of performing Qurbani but does not do so should not even come NEAR our EIDGAH, (place of Eid Namaaz).

ON WHOM IS QURBANI WAALIB?

1. Qurbani is Waajib on all Muslims (male and female) who are sane, Baaligh (have reached the age of puberty) and are the possessors of minimum Zakatable wealth (Nisaab) i.e. about R 230.00. It is not necessary that the ownership of such wealth be for a full year.
2. Qurbani is Waajib on a man for himself only, not for his wife and children. However, it is his duty to see that his wife's and grown-up (Baaligh) children's Qurbani are made if they are possessors of Nisaab. If he makes their Qurbani out of his wealth with their permission, their Qurbani will be valid.

Qurbani is not Waajib on poor people (who do not possess wealth equal to Nisaab) nor on travellers (Mussaafirs) nor on minors. If a minor reaches the age of puberty or a Musaafir becomes a Muqeem, i.e. by completing his journey or intending to stay in one place for 15 days or more, before the sunset of the 12th Zil Hijjah, then Qurbani is Waajib on them.

4. Qurbani on behalf of a deceased person is Waajib if he had made Wasiyyat that it should be undertaken from his wealth, provided the cost does not exceed one third of his net estate.

5. Qurbani is Waajib on a person who makes a Nazr (Vow), i.e. if a certain work of mine is carried out: I will make Qurbani, then Qurbani becomes Waajib on him when that task is accomplished. This Qurbani must be carried out in the days of Qurbani, unless it is generally excepted and understood that merely slaughtering an animal on ANY DAY is referred to as Qurbani, and this had been the intention of the person who made a vow; then it will be permissible for him to sacrifice an animal on any day.

6. If a poor person buys an animal during the days of Qurbani, with the intention of Qurbani then it becomes Waajib upon him to sacrifice this animal. However, if this animal dies or gets lost, Qurbani will not remain Waajib on him. It will not be necessary for him to buy another animal. If he buys another animal and thereafter the first one is found, it becomes Waajib upon him to sacrifice both animals.

7. A person on whom Qurbani is Waajib, purchased an animal for sacrifice. Thereafter this animal was lost, stolen or died. In such a case it will be Waajib to sacrifice another animal in its place. If, after purchasing the second animal the first one is found, the sacrificing of only one animal is Waajib upon him. If he sacrifices the second animal then it is preferable to give as charity the difference in price between the two animals, if there be any, e.g. the 1st animal had cost him R 100, and the second had cost him R 80. He should now give R 20 as charity. However, it is preferable to make Qurbani of both the animals.

8. A person, on whom Qurbani is Waajib, bought an animal for sacrifice. Due to some reason, he did not slaughter it on the fixed days of Qurbani. It is now compulsory upon him to give the animal away, alive, as charity. If he did not purchase the animal

and Qurbani was Waajib on him, It is obligatory for him to give as charity, the value of an animal.

9. If a person, on whom Qurbani was Waajib, failed to carry it out for a number of years, should give the value of that number of animals as charity. Slaughtering of that amount of animals during the days of Qurbani will not compensate for the missed Qurbani, but will instead be regarded as voluntary Qurbani.
10. If a person carries out Qurbani on behalf of a person on whom Qurbani is Waajib, without his permission and without his knowing; this Qurbani will not be valid. If it is done with his permission or instruction, it is permissible.
11. It is Mustahab (preferable) for those intending to make Qurbani not to cut their hair or clip their nails (from the time the moon for Zil Hijjah is sighted until after Qurbani.)
12. Qurbani is an Ibaadat that has to be carried out every year on whom it is Waajib. Being a Hajee is not a condition for Qurbani becoming Waajib.

THE TIME FOR QURBANI

1. The time for Qurbani begins after Eid Salaat on the 10th of Zil Hijjah and ends at the setting of the sun on the 12th of Zil Hijjah.
2. It is better to make Qurbani on the first day, then the second day and lastly the third day.
3. Qurbani is allowed during the two intervening nights but it is preferable during the day because of the possibility of not slaughtering correctly.
4. People living in remote village areas where Eid Salaat is not performed, may slaughter after Fajr time (Subah Saadiq-early dawn) has set in on the morning of the 10th Zil Hijjah.
5. If a person residing in a town (where Eid Salaat is performed) sends his animal to the village (where Eid Salaat is not performed), it is permissible that his animal be slaughtered before the Eid Salaat.
6. If a doubt occurs as to whether it is the 12th or the 13th, it is

Mustahab (preferable) to give away all the meat in sacrifice after slaughtering the animal.

7. If an animal bought for Qurbani was not slaughtered during these days, it must be given away alive, as charity.
8. These days, i.e. the 10th, 11th and the 12th of Zil Hijab are known as AYYAAMUN NAHR (the days of slaughtering).

CONDITIONS FOR THE QURBANI ANIMAL

1. Qurbani can be made of goats, sheep, cattle and camels; male or female: No other type of animal is allowed for Qurbani.
2. Castrated animals may be used for Qurbani. This type of animal is preferable.
3. Qurbani of barren animals is also allowed.
4. Goats, sheep have to be at least one year old. However, very healthy sheep that looks one year old may also be used.
5. Cattle must be at least two years old.
6. Camels must be at least five years old.
7. Sheep and goats count as one share per animal. Cattle and camels are divided into seven shares per animal, i.e. the Qurbani of seven persons is allowed with one cow or one camel.
8. If a person sacrifices one cow or camel (without sharing with others), his Qurbani will be accomplished by the whole animal, If he sacrifices several animals instead of one, his Waajib Qurbani will be accomplished by one animal and the other animals will be counted as Nafil (voluntary) Qurbani.
9. If less than seven persons make Qurbani of a cow or camel, it is permissible. If any person's share is less than one seventh, the Qurbani of all the persons will not be valid.
10. If more than seven persons share one COW or camel, the Qurbani of none of them will be valid.
11. When more than one person makes Qurbani of Cow or Camel, it

is a condition for the validity of the Qurbani of all the persons that each one of them have the Niyyat of Qurbani or Aqeeqa. If any one of them has an intention of merely eating meat, the Qurbani of all the share-holders will not be valid.

12. When buying a cow or camel one made an intention that he will share this animal with others. After purchasing the animal he finds others to share with him. This Qurbani will be proper.
13. At the time of purchasing a cow or camel, one makes the intention that he will not share this animal with others, it is now, not good for him to share that animal with others, but if he does, the Qurbani of the share-holders will be valid. Qurbani will also be valid if he is a person upon whom Qurbani is Waajib, i.e. a rich person. If he is a poor person then he will have to make Qurbani for that number of shares that he has given to others. If the days of Qurbani have passed, then he must give the value of that amount of shares to the poor.

14. The animals chosen for Qurbani should be healthy, free from faults and defects.

THE QURBANI ANIMALS THAT HAVE THE FOLLOWING DEFECTS, CANNOT BE SACRIFICED:

1. An animal that was born without horns or the horns had broken off from the middle, can be used for Qurbani. If the horn has broken off from the root, it cannot be used for Qurbani.
2. Those animals that are totally blind or have lost one-third or more of their eyesight, or one-third or more of the tail is cut, are not allowed for Qurbani.
3. An animal which limps and walks on three legs and cannot put the injured (4th) leg onto the ground, or that it can put the injured leg onto the ground, but is unable to walk on it, cannot be used for Qurbani. However, if it is unable to walk on it, but can still take support from it, then Qurbani is allowed with it, even though it is limping.
4. Animals having no teeth at all cannot be used for Qurbani. If an

5. If an animal has lost some teeth only, and has most of the teeth, Qurbani is permissible with it. If most of the teeth are lost, Qurbani is not proper with that animal.

6. Animals born without ears cannot be used for Qurbani. Animals with very small ears can be used for Qurbani.

7. Animals that are so thin and weak or sick that they are unable to walk the place of slaughtering, cannot be used for Qurbani.

8. If an animal sustains an injury whilst slaughtering, eg, a leg breaks or an ear is cut etc., the Qurbani of such an animal will be valid.

9. An animal was bought in a healthy and perfect state. After purchasing it, an accident occurred which rendered the animal unfit for Qurbani. In such a case, if the purchaser is not wealthy (Saahibe Nisaab), it will be permissible to offer the same animal for Qurbani. If the purchaser is Saahibe Nisaab, then it is compulsory upon him to obtain another animal in place of the injured animal.

10. If an animal bought for Qurbani gives birth (before being slaughtered), then this newly born animal should also be slaughtered.

THE QURBANI MEAT AND SKIN OF THE ANIMAL

1. It is allowed for a person who performs Qurbani (Waajib or Nafl), to either eat the flesh or to give it to whomsoever he pleases, rich or poor, Muslim or non-Muslim.

2. It is preferable that the meat be divided into three parts. One part for the home, one part for relatives and friends and one part for the poor and needy.

3. The meat or skin cannot be given to an employee or to a butcher in payment of his labour. It may be given to them as a gift.

4. The skin of the Qurbani could be kept for one's personal use or could be given to anybody else for their personal use. It could be used as a water bag, Musalla, etc.

5. The Qurbani skin cannot be given in lieu of any type of services. Thus, the skin cannot be given to an Imaam or Mu'azzin in lieu of their services.

6. If the skin is sold, the amount received for it cannot be used by oneself. It is Waajib to give it away as Sadaqah (charity) to the poor and needy.
7. It is not permissible for one to eat the meat of the following types of Qurbani:
 - a) Qurbani that is made as a Kaffarah for a Jinaayat (error) committed during Hajj.
 - b) Qurbani performed for a deceased person due to his Wasiyyat, i.e. his instruction before his death.
 - c) Qurbani performed due to a Nazar (vow) one had made.

The meat of the above-mentioned types of Qurbani has to be distributed to the poor and needy ONLY.

8. The meat of Nafil (voluntary) Qurbani which one had made for the deceased, can be eaten by all, similar to one's own Qurbani
9. If more than one person participates in the Qurbani of an animal that has seven shares and each share-holder requests for his share of the meat, then it is necessary that the meat be distributed equally, by weight. If one person's share is more than the others, it will not be permissible as this will become interest.
10. If one person's share of meat is less than the others, but with the meat, he is given the skin or the head or legs of the animal, it will now be permissible. Great care should be taken in order to distribute the meat EQUALLY.

ZABAH (SLAUGHTER) OF THE QURBANI ANIMAL

1. It is Mustahab (preferable) that the person to whom the Qurbani animal belongs, slaughters it personally, provided he is able to slaughter (make Zabah) properly.
2. If the owner is unable to slaughter, it is better to delegate the Zabah to another Muslim who is acquainted with the requirements of proper Islamic Zabah.
3. A Muslim woman, who knows how to make Zabah, is also permitted

to slaughter.

4. If the Zabah has been delegated, it is desirable that the person for whom the Qurbani is being made, be present.
5. The Islamic Zabah requires that the throat, the external jugular veins and the wind-pipe of the animal to be swiftly and clearly severed with a very sharp knife, together with the recital of BISMILLAH
بِسْمِ اللَّهِ أَكْبَرُ. ALLAHU AKBAR.
6. If only two of the passages and veins are cut, the Zabah will be incorrect. Yes, if any three of the four are cut, the zabah will be in order.
7. It is Mustahab (preferable) to face the Qiblah while slaughtering.
8. It is preferable to sharpen the knife before slaughtering in order to ease the suffering of the animal. After slaughtering, the animal should not be skinned or cut up into pieces before it turns completely cold.
9. An animal should not be slaughtered in the presence of another animal.
10. **DU'AA FOR SLAUGHTERING:**

Lay the throat of the animal towards the Qiblah and recite :

جب قربانی کا جانور قبلہ رخ لٹا دے تو پہلے یہ دعا پڑھے :-

إِنِّي وَجَّهْتُ وَجْهِيَ لِلَّذِي فَطَرَ السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضَ حَنِيفًا وَمَا
أَكَا مِنَ الْبُشْرِ كَيْفَ. إِنَّ صَلَاتِي وَنُسُكِي وَمَحْيَايَ وَمَمَاتِي لِلَّهِ رَبِّ
الْعَالَمِينَ لَا شَرِيكَ لَهُ وَبِذَلِكَ أُمِرْتُ وَأَنَا مِنَ الْمُسْلِمِينَ.
اللَّهُمَّ مِنْكَ وَلَكَ.

(For me, I have set my face, firmly and truly towards Him Who created the heavens and the earth, and never shall I give partners to Allah. Verily my worship and my sacrifice, my living and my dying are for Allah, Lord of the world. O Allah this sacrifice is from You and is for You.)

WHILE SLAUGHTERING THE ANIMAL READ:

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ أَكْبَرُ

(In the name of Allah, Allah is the Greatest)

DU'AA TO BE RECITED AFTER ZABAH (SACRIFICE):

دُعَا کرے کے بعد یہ دعا پڑھے

اَللّٰهُمَّ تَقَبَّلْهُ مِنِّيْ كَمَا تَقَبَّلْتَ مِنْ حَبِيْبِكَ مُحَمَّدٍ وَخَلِيْلِكَ
اِبْرَاهِيْمَ عَلَيْهِمَا الصَّلٰوةُ وَالسَّلَامُ

(O Allah, accept from me (this sacrifice) like You have accepted from Your beloved Muhammad (ﷺ) and your friend Ibrahim (عليه السلام). Peace be upon them.)

- ♦ If these Du'as are not memorised then make intention of Qurbani and merely recite :

BISMILLAHU ALLAHU AKBAR بِسْمِ اللَّهِ أَكْبَرُ

The Qurbani will be correct.

THE TAKBEERAAT OF TASHRIQ

1. It is Waajib for every adult Muslim to recite the Takbeeraat of Tashriq after every Farz Salaat, which is performed with Jama'at, from the Fajr Salaat on the 9th of Zil Hijjah until after the Asr Salaat on the 13th Al Hijjah (23 Namaazes).
2. The Takbeer should be recited once after each of the 23 Namaazes.
3. It should be recited in an audible tone, not silently and not very loudly.
4. It is desirable for those who perform their Salaat alone (men or women) and Musaafirs (travellers), to recite these Takbeeraat softly.
5. The Takbeeraat to be recited are as follows:

اللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ اللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ

اللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ وَلِلَّهِ الْحَمْدُ

Allahu Akbar, Allahu Akbar, Laa ilaaha il-lal-laahu wa Allahu Akbar, Allahu Akbar, wa lillaahil hamd.

(Allah is the Greatest. Allah is the Greatest. There is no Deity besides Allah and Allah is the Greatest. Allah is the Greatest and All praise belongs to Him alone.)

SUNNATS OF EIDUL-ADHA

1. Awaken earlier than usual.
2. Brush the teeth with Miswaak.
3. Have a Ghusl (bath).
4. Be well dressed in an Islamic manner.
5. Dress in one's best clothes, not necessarily new.
6. Use Itr.
7. Perform Eid Salaat at the Eidgaah.
8. Avoid eating before Eid Namaaz.
9. Go to the place of Eid Namaaz early.
10. Walk to the place of Namaaz (if it is within walking distance).
11. Recite the Takbeeraat aloud on the way to the place of Eid Namaaz.
12. Use different routes to and from the place of Eid Namaaz.

اَللّٰهُ اَكْبَرُ ط اَللّٰهُ اَكْبَرُ ط لَا اِلٰهَ اِلَّا اَللّٰهُ وَ اَللّٰهُ اَكْبَرُ ط اَللّٰهُ اَكْبَرُ ط
وَبِنِ الْحَبْدِ ط

عن

AQUEEQA

AQUEEQA: SACRIFICE OF AN ANIMAL FOR A NEWLY BORN CHILD AND THE REMOVAL OF THE BABY'S HAIR SACRIFICE

MAS'ALAH No. 1: When a child is born, male or female it should be given a name on the seventh day of birth. When the hair of the head of the baby is shaved, a sacrifice is also offered which is called AQUEEQA. By Aqueeqa all impurities of the child are removed and the child is saved from all calamities by Allah.

MAS'ALAH No. 2: The method of performing Aqueeqa is that for a male child, two goats or sheep and for a girl one goat or sheep is sacrificed. If an animal of seven shares (cow or camel) is used for Aqueeqa, then two shares will be taken for a male and one for a female. The hair of the head is then shaved. Silver, equal to the weight of the shaved hair, is also given in charity. However, this is not compulsory.

MAS'ALAH No. 3: Aqueeqa is performed on the seventh day of the birth of a child. If not done on the seventh day, then, whenever it is done, it should be the seventh day, eg. if the child was born on a Friday, then Aqueeqa should be performed on the following Thursday (the 7th day after birth). If it is not performed on this Thursday, then any other Thursday.

MAS'ALAH No. 4: That animal which is not permissible for Qurbani, is also not permissible for Aqueeqa. Requirements for the animals of Qurbani and Aqueeqa are the same.

MAS'ALAH No. 5: It is permissible to distribute the meat of an animal of Aqueeqa raw or cooked, and can also be served to guests.

MAS'ALAH No. 6: If one does not possess sufficient money, then it is permissible for such a person to sacrifice only one goat for a male child. There is no harm if Aqueeqa is not performed provided one does not have the means for Aqueeqa.

MAS'ALAH No. 7: Before sacrificing the animal (for Aqueeqa), the

Following Du'aa may be recited:

اللَّهُمَّ هَذِهِ عَقِيْقَةُ ابْنِي فَلَانٍ دَمُهَا بِدَمِهِ وَخَنَافَتُهَا بِخَنَافَتِهِ
وَعَظْمُهَا بِعَظْمِهِ وَجِلْدُهَا بِجِلْدِهِ وَشَعْرُهَا بِشَعْرِهَا وَجُزْأُهَا
بِجُزْأِهَا وَكُلُّهَا بِكُلِّهَا. اللَّهُمَّ اجْعَلْهَا فِدَاءً لِي ابْنِي مِنَ النَّارِ ط

یا اللہ یہ عقیقہ ہے میرے فلاں بیٹے کا، خون اُسکا بدلے اُسکے خون کے، اور گوشت اُسکا بدلے اُسکے
گوشت کے، اور ہڈی اُسکی بدلے اُسکی ہڈی کے، اور چمڑا اُسکا بدلے اس کے چمڑے کے، اور بال
اُسکا بدلے اس کے ہر بال کے، اور ہر جز اُسکا بدلے اُسکے ہر جزو کے، اور کُل اُسکا بدلے اس کے کُل
کے، یا اللہ اس عقیقہ کو قبول کر فدیہ واسطے میرے بیٹے کے آگ سے۔

(O, Allah I sacrifice this animal in Thy name as a sadqa for my child in
substitution blood for blood, flesh for flesh, bones for bones, skin for
skin and hair for hair. O' Allah accept this sacrifice for the protection
of my child from Hell.)

- ◆ If the Aqueeqa is for girl then in place of ابْنِی say بِنْتِی and mention the name of the child boy or girl at this point : فَلَانٍ

DU'AA FOR SLAUGHTERING:

Lay the throat of the animal towards the Qiblah and recite:

إِنِّي وَجَّهْتُ وَجْهِيَ لِلَّذِي فَطَرَ السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضَ حَنِيفًا وَمَا
أَنَا مِنَ الْمُشْرِكِينَ. إِنَّ صَلَاتِي وَنُسُكِي وَمَحْيَايَ وَمَمَاتِي لِلَّهِ رَبِّ
الْعَالَمِينَ لَا شَرِيكَ لَهُ وَبِذَلِكَ أُمِرْتُ وَأَنَا مِنَ الْمُسْلِمِينَ.
اللَّهُمَّ مِنْكَ وَلَكَ.

(For me, I have set my face, firmly and truly towards Him Who created
the heavens and the earth. And never shall I give partners to Allah.
Verify my worship and my sacrifice, my living and my dying are for
Allah, Lord of the world. O Allah this sacrifice is from You and is for
You.)

WHILE SLAUGHTERING THE ANIMAL READ:

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ أَكْبَرُ

(In the name of Allah, Allah is the Greatest)

SADAQATUL FITR

ON WHOM IS SADAQATUL FITR WAAJIB:

- Sadaqatul Fitr is Waajib upon one who possesses so much that Zakaat is due on him.
 - A person (on whom Zakaat is not due) possesses items more than his daily needs (for the purpose of trade or otherwise). The value of these items adds up to the Nisaab (amount for Zakaat being Waajib). Sadaqatul Fitr will be Waajib upon such a person as well, even though a whole year may not have passed on such items.
 - A person should discharge his Sadaqatul Fitr in respect of himself and all those who are dependent upon him like his wife and his minor children (who do not possess any wealth). If they do, the Sadaqatul Fitr may be given from their wealth.
 - It is not Waajib to give Sadaqatul Fitr on behalf of a child born on the day of Eid (after the time of Fajr sets in).
 - It is not Waajib to give Sadaqatul Fitr on behalf of one's mature children. Yes, one may give on behalf of one's insane child.
- NOTE: One upon whom Sadaqatul Fitr is Waajib, must discharge this duty whether he has observed the Rozas of Ramadhaan or not.
- Sadaqatul Fitr is not Waajib on one for whom it is permissible to take Zakaat and Sadaqatul Fitr.

WHEN DOES SADAQATUL FITR BECOME WAAJIB:

- Sadaqatul Fitr becomes Waajib on the day of Eid as the time of Fajr Salaah arrives. If one dies before the time of Fajr Salaah, Sadaqatul Fitr will not be Waajib upon him. Neither should it be taken nor paid from his property.

TIME FOR DISCHARGING SADAQATUL FITR:

It is better to give Sadaqatul Fitr before reaching the Eidgaah. However, if it is not given before, it may then be given after the Eid Salaah.

- ▶ If one discharge this duty before the day of Eid, i.e. during Ramadhaan, the duty will be regarded as discharged and will not have to be repeated.
- ◆ If one did not give Sadaqatul Fitr on Eid day, he will not be absolved of this duty. He should thus give it can any subsequent day.

RATE (AMOUNT) OF SADAQATUL FITR:

The following could be given as Sadaqatul Fitr:

1. 1/2 Saa' wheat, flour, bran or raisins; or
 2. One Saa' dates or barley; or
 3. The equivalent of either one in cash or kind.
- ◆ One Saa' equals approximately 3.828 kg.

THE RECIPIENTS OF SADAQATUL FITR:

- ◆ The recipients of Sadaqatul Fitr are the same as that of Zakaat.
- ◆ Further, the Sadaqatul Fitr of one person could be given to just one rightful recipient or could be distributed between a few recipients of Sadaqatul Fitr.
- ◆ It is also permissible that the Sadaqatul Fitr of a group of people be collectively given to just one individual (recipient of Sadaqatul Fitr).

Note

تَعْلِيمُ الْحَقِّ
Ta'leemul Haq

حج وعمره

Hajj
and
Umrah

14

HAJJ (PILGRIMAGE)

HAJJ IS ONE OF THE
FIVE PILLARS OF ISLAM



THE VIRTUES AND IMPORTANCE OF Hajj

- ◆ Hajj means to visit the sacred house of Allah in Makkah Mukarramah during the days of Hajj, (i.e. 8, 9, 10, 11 and 12th of Zil Hijjah). This is the fifth of the religious duties of a Muslim.

وَيَذَرُ عَلَى النَّاسِ حُجُّ الْبَيْتِ مَنِ اسْتَطَاعَ إِلَيْهِ سَبِيلًا وَمَنْ كَفَرَ
فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ غَنِيٌّ عَنِ الْعَالَمِينَ

(Pilgrimage to the house of Allah is a bounded duty unto mankind for him who has the means to find the way there unto, and whosoever disbelieves, then verily Allah is free and independent from the entire universe.) [Aali Imraan : 97]

Rasulullah (ﷺ) is reported to have mentioned:

1. "Verily Allah has declared Hajj Farz upon you, therefore perform Hajj".
2. "Hasten in performing Hajj, for verily one never knows what will befall him."
3. "One who dies while on his journey for Hajj, Allah will record the reward of Hajj for him upto the day of Qiyaamah, and one who dies while on his journey for Umrah, Allah will record the reward of Umrah for him upto the day of Qiyaamah".
4. "For an accepted Hajj, there is no reward besides Jannah (Paradise)."
5. "One who possesses wealth and has all the means by which he

could reach the Sacred House of Allah (the Kaba) and yet does not perform Hajj, he then may either die as a Nasraani (Christian) or a Majoos (fire worshipper)".

UPON WHOM IS HAJJ FARZ (CONDITIONS)

◆ HAJJ is FARZ once in a lifetime upon every adult, male and female. The conditions that make Hajj FARZ are as follows.

1. To be a Muslim;
2. To be mentally fit (not insane);
3. To be physically fit, (not invalid or handicapped);
4. Bulough, (to be physically matured);
5. To be a free person, (not to be a slave);
6. To have sufficient provision for one's dependents,, eg. children, for the duration of one's absence as well as to possess all requirements for travel and be financially independent. If one has the means to travel and staying at:
 - ◆ Makkah Mukarramah
 - ◆ Muzdalifah
 - ◆ Mina and
 - ◆ Arafat

HAJJ becomes FARZ even though one does NOT have the means of going to Madinah Munawwarah.

7. Security of route;
8. A woman must be accompanied by her husband or a Mahram. (A Mahram is : A male member of the family whom she is NOT allowed to marry according to Islamic law.)
 - ◆ If any of the above conditions are not found, Hajj will not be FARZ.
 - ◆ Once the above conditions are found, Hajj becomes Farz. It becomes Waajib upon such a person to perform Hajj during the first available Hajj period. Delaying the Hajj will be a sinful act.

MASAA'IL REGARDING THE MAHRAM

1. If the Mahram is a minor or one who is so irreligious that he cannot be trusted by even his mother and sister, then it is not proper to travel with such a person.
2. When a trustworthy Mahram is found, it is not permissible for the husband to refuse permission for her to travel. If he does, she should still proceed for Hajj.
3. A girl almost attaining maturity should also be accompanied by a Mahram.
4. A woman going for Hajj (with a Mahram) should bear all the cost of the Mahram.
5. If no Mahram is found by a woman all her life, it will not be regarded a sin if she does not perform Hajj. However, such a woman MUST mention in her will that someone be sent for Hajj on her behalf on her inheritors provided it be possible to fulfil the Hajj expenses from one-third of her estate.

OTHER MASAA'IL

1. A person delayed his FARZ Hajj. He thereafter becomes blind or so ill that he is unable to undertake the journey. Such a person should draw up a will for Hajj-e-Badal after his death.
2. If one has left so much wealth after his death that after discharging his liabilities, Hajj-e-Badal can be performed from one-third of the remaining wealth, then it is essential for the heirs of the deceased to carry out the will. If one-third is not sufficient to cover the expenses for Hajj, then the heirs are not obliged to carry out the will. However, if they willingly make up the deficiency, then someone may be sent for Hajj-e-Badal.

N.B To use the wealth of Naa-Baalighs (minors), even with their consent, is not permissible.

3. If one-third of the legacy was not sufficient to carry out the will and the heirs did not agree to part with their share, and thus Hajj-e-

Badal was not performed, then the deceased is not sinful.

4. It is NOT proper for a woman in IDDAT, being widowed or divorced, to disrupt her Iddat and go for Hajj.
5. While in Ihraam a woman should not cover her face with a cloth. A net is used for this purpose. It should be tied on the face in a manner that it does NOT TOUCH the face.

TYPES OF HAJJ

THERE ARE THREE TYPES OF HAJ:

1. **QIRAAN:** To perform Umrah first in the months of Hajj, (Shawwal, Zil Qa'dah and the first 8 days of Zil Hijjah) and thereafter to perform Hajj with one Ihraam, i.e. one will remain in the Haram of Makkah (varying from 5 to 14.5 kms in various directions) in the state of Ihraam from the moment the Meeqaat is entered until the Ihraam is released on the 10th Zil Hijjah.
2. **TAMATTU':** To perform Umrah during the months of Hajj and release the Ihraam. Thereafter to perform Hajj the same year without leaving the Meeqaat.
3. **IFRAAD:** To perform Hajj only, during the days of Hajj.

The one who performs:

- ◆ 1- QIRAAN is called a QAARIN.
- ◆ 2- TAMATTU' is called a MUTAMATTI'.
- ◆ 3- IFRAAD is called a MUFRID.

According to the Hanaf school of thought QIRAAN is considered the best. Thereafter TAMATTU' and lastly IFRAAD.¹

THE FIVE DAYS OF HAJJ (IN BRIEF)

1st DAY: 8th ZUL-HIJJAH YAUM-UT-TARWIYAH

After putting on their Ihraams for Hajj, the Hajeess proceed to MINA after sunrise and perform 5 Salaahs there, i.e. Zohar, Asr, Maghrib, Esha and Fajr of the next day (9 Zil Hijjah).

1- Once the intention is made to discharge the obligation of Hajj, it is Farz to study the Masa'il of Hajj (preferably under the guidance of an Aalim). For this purpose one may refer to the Khazaa HAJ-UMRAH ZIYAARAH by Mufti Abdullah bin Abdurrahman Ebrahim, obtainable from Iqbal Publications, Box 25051 Fernsloep, Transvaal, South Africa.

2nd Day: 9th ZUL-HIJJAH YAUM-UL-ARAFAH

After sunrise the Hajeess proceed to ARAFAAT and make WUQOOF after ZAWAAL. Zohar and Asr Salaah will be performed here. Here they remain engaged in Du'aa, Zikr, Tilaawat, etc. until sunset. Immediately after sunset they proceed to Muzdalifah. Here they will perform Maghrib and Esha at the time of Esha. The night will be spent at Muzdalifah.

3rd DAY: 10th ZUL-HIJJAH YAUM-UN-NAHR

After performing Fajr Salaah at Muzdalifah, the Hajeess proceed to Mina before sunrise. On this day four important rites have to be performed :

1. RAMEE of Jamaratul Aqabah (stoning the big Shaytaan).
2. ZABH (to sacrifice an animal).
3. HALQ or Qasr (shaving or trimming the hair of the head).
4. To perform TAWAAFUZ ZIYAARAH.

4th DAY: 11th ZUL-HIJJAH

All three SHAYTAANS have to be pelted on this day and the night will be spent at MINA. RAMEE, i.e. pelting time begins after ZAWAAL. and ends before SUNSET.

5th DAY: 12th ZUL-HIJJAH

Make Ramee, i.e. pelt all three Shaytaans after Zawaal. The Hajeess may now proceed to MAKKAH MU'AAZAMAH. Those who wish to remain in Mina on the 13th Zul Hijjah should pelt the 3 Shaytaans before proceeding to Makkah Mukarramah. The pelting on this day is permissible throughout the day (including the period before Zawaal).

HAJJ GUIDE INFOGRAPHIC



1 INTEND FOR HAJJ AND ENTER STATE OF IHRAM BEFORE MIQAT

2 TAWAF AL-QUDOOM

3 SA'I BETWEEN SAFA & MARWA

4 GO TO MINA

5 SPEND TIME IN ARAFAT

6 SPEND NIGHT IN MUZDALIFAH AND COLLECT PEBBLES

7 PELT ONLY JAMARAH AL-AQABAH

8 SACRIFICE ANIMAL

9 SHAVE/TRIM HAIR

10 TAWAF AL-IFADAH

11 PELT ALL JAMARAH AL-ULA, AL-WUSTA, AL-AQABA

12 FAREWELL TAWAF

UMRAH

It is Sunnate Muakkadah to perform Umrah once in a lifetime. Umrah could be performed practically throughout the year. However, an Umrah during Ramadhaan is superior to the Umrah performed on other days. Rasulullah (ﷺ) has mentioned: "An Umrah performed during Ramadhaan is equal (in reward) to performing Hajj with me."

It is Makroohe Tahreemee to perform Umrah on the 9, 10, 11 and 12th of Zil Hijjah (the days of Hajj).

THE FARAA'IDH AND WAAJIBAAT OF UMRAH:

There are two Farz in Umrah:

1. To wear the Ihraam.
2. To complete at least four circuits of Tawaaf.

THERE ARE THREE WAAJIBAATS IN UMRAH:

1. Completion of all seven circuits of Tawaaf.
2. Sa'ee between Safa and Marwah.
3. Shaving of the hair or trimming it (equally) on all sides.

THE PROCEDURE OF UMRAH (IN BRIEF):

1. Put on the Ihraam before entering the Meeqaat (boundary).
2. Perform two Rak'aats Sunnatul Ihraam.
3. Say the Niyyah and Talbiyah.
4. Proceed to Makkah Mukarramah, en route recite the Talbiyah constantly.
5. Perform a Tawaaf with Idtibaa and Ramal.
6. Perform two Rak'aats Waajib Salaat (after the Tawaaf) behind MAQAAME IBRAHIM.
7. Proceed to the Multazam and Zam Zam well.
8. Perform Sa'ee between Safa and Marwah.

9. Shave or trim the hair of the head.

DETAILED LESSON ON UMRAH

1. IHRAAM:

It is incumbent upon all persons living beyond the Meeqaaf (boundary) to put on the Ihraam if they intend going to Makkah Mukarramah. A woman not in the state of performing Salaat is not excused from this.

It is Sunnat to have a bath before putting on the Ihraam. If this is not possible, Wudhu will suffice. It is Mustahab to pair the nails, trim the hair and remove all unwanted hair before the bath.

- ◆ The Ihraam for men consists of two pieces of cloth : one for the lower portion of the body (waist upto above the ankles) and the other for the upper portion of the body. The head and face should be left uncovered. No other garments should be worn. The footwear should be such that the (centre bones) of the upper part of the feet (the area of the shoe-lace) must be left uncovered.
- ◆ Women will put on their normal clothes. However, their heads must be fully covered. Their faces and hands (upto the wrists) COULD be exposed. It becomes WAAJIB to cover their faces if they fear Fitnah. This should be done in such a manner that the covering does NOT touch the face.

2. TWO RAK'AATS SUNNAT OF IHRAAM:

After putting on the Ihraam, perform 2 Rak'aah Sunnatul Ihraam with the headgear. (A woman not in the state of performing Salaah, will not perform this Salaah).

- ◆ She will perform Ghusl.
- ◆ Put on her clothes (which will serve as her Ihraam).
- ◆ Make the Niyyah and recite the Talblyah.
- ◆ After entering Makkah Mukarramah she will take a bath when Salaah becomes Farz on her,
- ◆ wear her clothes (which will serve as her Ihraam) and perform the

Umrah.

3. NIYYAH AND TALBIYAH:

After having performed the two Rak'aats Sunnat of Ihraam, remove the headgear (men only) and say the Niyyah and Talbiyah which are Waajib. Without this the Ihraam will not be accepted.

- ◆ If one goes beyond the Meeqaat without the Niyyah (with Ihraam), Dium will have to be given.

The Niyyah is as follows:

اَللّٰهُمَّ اِنِّىْ اُرِيْدُ الْعُمْرَةَ فَيَسِّرْهَا لِيْ وَتَقَبَّلْهَا مِنِّىْ -

(O Allah, I intend performing Umrah, render it easy for me, and accept it from me.)

The Talbiyah is as follow :

لَبَّيْكَ اَللّٰهُمَّ لَبَّيْكَ. لَبَّيْكَ لَا شَرِيْكَ لَكَ لَبَّيْكَ. اِنَّ الْحَمْدَ
وَالنِّعْمَةَ لَكَ وَالْمُلْكَ لَا شَرِيْكَ لَكَ -

(Here I am at Your service O Allah, I am present, I am present, You have no partner, I am present, All praise and graciousness as well as the entire Universe is Yours, You have no partner.)

- ◆ When in IHRAAM repeat the TALBIYAH as often as possible. It is Mustahab to repeat it thrice whenever recited.
- ◆ After the Niyyah and Talbiyah one becomes a Muhrim (one whose Ihraam is valid).

When in IHRAAM, abstain from the following:

- Quarrelling and using vulgar languages.
- Clipping the nails.
- Hunting of wildlife, chasing game or aiding a hunter in any way.
- Killing lice, indicating it to others and removing it from the body or hair.
- To use perfume, scent and every other thing that has a fragrance, eg. fragrant soap, etc.

- f. To trim, shave or clip the hair off the body.
- g. Intercourse, and everything relating or leading to it.
- h. The males must not wear sewn garments, underwear, gloves or socks. Their heads and faces must NOT be covered at any time.
- i. It is Makrooh to wash one's head and beard with soap. It is also Makrooh to remove dirt from one's body by using soap or any other cleansing agent.

The following things are permitted for a MUHRIM:

- a. To take a bath, be it Waajib or to cool one's body.
- b. Killing of wild dogs, crows, scorpions, flies, bugs, mosquitoes, cockroaches and wild animals that are harmful.
- c. To use a Miswaak.
- d. To slaughter cattle, poultry, sheep and goats.
- e. To rub the body gently, taking note that no hair falls off the body.
- f. To use odourless Surma.

4. ENTRY INTO MAKKAH MUKARRAMAH:

On reaching Makkah Mukarramah one should find accommodation and settle first. Thereafter it is Mustahab (preferable) to perform Ghusl. If this is not possible, Wudhu will suffice. Do not use soap or shave when bathing.

Thereafter enter the Masjidul Haraam, preferably through Babus-Salaam.

It should be remembered that a woman, not in the state of performing Salaah, should NOT enter the Masjid.

Enter with the right foot, with utmost humbleness and respect and recite:

اَللّٰهُمَّ افْتَحْ لِيْ اَبْوَابَ رَحْمَتِكَ وَسَهِّلْ لِيْ اَبْوَابَ رِزْقِكَ

(O Allah, open for us the doors of Your mercies, and make easy for us the means of livelihood)

The NIYYAH FOR L'TIKAAF should also be made:

تَوَيْتُ الْإِعْتِكَافَ مَا دُمْتُ فِي الْمَسْجِدِ.

(I intend making I'tikaaf for Allah till I remain in the Masjid)

and the Talbiyah be recited constantly:

لَبَّيْكَ اللَّهُمَّ لَبَّيْكَ. لَبَّيْكَ لَا شَرِيكَ لَكَ لَبَّيْكَ. إِنَّ الْحَمْدَ
وَالنِّعْمَةَ لَكَ وَالْمُلْكَ لَا شَرِيكَ لَكَ

(Here I am at YOUR service O Allah, I am present, I am present, You have no partner, I am present, All praise and graciousness as well as the entire Universe is Yours, You have no partner).



On sighting the KABA SHAREEF, recite:

اللَّهُمَّ أَنْتَ السَّلَامُ وَمِنْكَ السَّلَامُ فَحَيِّنَا رَبَّنَا بِالسَّلَامِ.
اللَّهُمَّ زِدْ هَذَا الْبَيْتَ تَشْرِيفًا وَتَعْظِيمًا وَتَكْرِيمًا وَمَهَابَةً
وَزِدْ مَنْ شَرَفَهُ وَكَرَّمَهُ مِنْ حُجَّه أَوْاعْتَمَرَهُ تَشْرِيفًا وَتَعْظِيمًا
وَتَكْرِيمًا وَبَرًّا.

(O Allah, You are Peace, and from You is peace, therefore keep us alive with peace. O Allah, increase this house of Yours with reverence, dignity, honour and respect; and increase those who perform Hajj or Umrah towards it in dignity, honour, reverence, obedience and righteousness)

- ◆ Thereafter one should engage himself in making Du'aa (supplication) for this is a place where Du'aas are accepted.
- ◆ If a Farz, Waajib or Sunnah Mu'akkadah Salaah has still to be

performed, then this should be completed before commencing the Tawaaf.

5. IDTIBAA:

Before commencing the Tawaaf, make Idtibaa, i.e. the covering of the body in a manner that the left shoulder, left arm and back are covered and the right arm entirely exposed.

Discontinue with the Idtibaa after the Tawaaf has been completed.

The two Rak'at Waajib Salaah should NOT be performed with the arm exposed (i.e. with Idtibaa).

6. THE TAWAAF:

After Idtibaa face the Kaba in a manner that the entire Hajare Aswad remains on your right and the left shoulder towards Rukne Yamaanee.

- ◆ Stand as close as possible to the Hajare Aswad.
- ◆ Now say the Niyyah, which is Waajib

THE NIYYAH IS AS FOLLOWS:

اَللّٰهُمَّ اِنِّىْ اُرِيْدُ طَوَافَ بَيْتِكَ الْحَرَامِ فَيَسِّرْهُ لِيْ وَتَقَبَّلْهُ مِنِّىْ
سَبْعَةَ اَشْوَاطٍ يَلٰهُ تَعَالٰى

(O Allah, I intend performing Tawaaf around Your sacred house, seven circuits for Allah, who is Mighty and Dignified, hence render it easy for me and accept from me.)

- ◆ Move sideways to your right, towards the Hajare Aswad with the face and chest towards the Kaba until in line with (squarely opposite) the Hajare Aswad. This is Mustahab. If this is difficult, say the Niyyah while standing in the line with Hajare Aswad (diametrically opposite).
- ◆ When squarely opposite the Hajare Aswad, raise both the hands to the ears (as one does when beginning Salaah). Say while raising the hands.

بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ اَللّٰهُ اَكْبَرُ وَلِيْلَهُ الْحَمْدُ
(In the name of Allah, Allah is the Greatest.)

- ◆ After lowering the hands, make Istilaam of the Hajare Aswad. A Mu'tamir (one performing Umrah) will discontinue with the Talbiyah after the first Istillaam.

7. ISTILAAM:

Istilaam is to place both hands on the Hajare Aswad and to kiss it gently thrice, between the two palms. (Be careful not to harass, puch or hurt, anyone in the process.) Hands should not be placed on the silver ring when kissing the Hajare Aswad.

- ◆ If Istilaam is not possible, merely place the hands on the Hajare Aswad. If this is also not possible, then one should stand diametrically opposite the Hajare Aswad and stretch both the hands, with the palms facing the Hajare Aswad, (as if one were placing them on it). Thereafter kiss the hands and commence the Tawaaf.

If this is also not possible, then merely say the Takbeer when raising the hands to the ears and commence the Tawaaf.

- ◆ It is Sunnat to make Istilaam of the Hajare Aswad In all seven circuit, Istilaam is Sunnat-e-Mu'akkadah (emphasised Sunnah).

8. RAMAL:

In the first three circuits of Tawaaf it is Sunnat to make Ramal (for men only).

(Ramal means to walk hastily, take shorter steps, lifting the legs forcefully, keeping the chest out and moving the shoulders simultaneously.)

- ◆ One should walk normally in the four remaining circuits.
- ◆ Commence the Tawaaf by moving towards the door of the Kaba (counter-clockwise). Move around the Kaba and the Hateem. It is Mustahab to place the right palm or both the palm or both the palms on the Rukne Yamaanee during every round.
- ◆ Touching it any other way or kissing it, is not recommended by the Shari'at.

When there are huge crowds or inconvenience is caused to others by touching the Rukne Yamaanee, omit it.

Perform Tawaaf with utmost humbleness, sincerely, dignity and respect. It is recommended that during Tawaaf one's behaviour and conduct be similar to that of Salaah. Looking about, pushing, mocking, etc., should be avoided.

It is Sunnah to recite the following Du'aas during Tawaaf :

اَللّٰهُمَّ قِنِّعْنِيْ بِمَا رَزَقْتَنِيْ وَبَارِكْ لِيْ فِيْهِ وَاخْلُفْ عَلَيَّ كُلَّ
غَائِبَةٍ لِّيْ بِخَيْرٍ . لَا اِلٰهَ اِلَّا اللّٰهُ وَحْدَهُ لَا شَرِيْكَ لَهٗ ، لَهٗ الْمُلْكُ
وَلَهٗ الْحَمْدُ ، وَهُوَ عَلٰى كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيْرٌ

(O Allah, give me contentment in that which You have provided for me, and bestow me with Barakah therein, and be successor of all whom I have left behind. There is no diety except Allah. He is alone. He has no partner, the universe belongs solely to Him, and all praise is solely for Him. He alone gives life and death, in His hands lies all the good and He has infinite power over everything.)

رَبَّنَا اٰتِنَا فِي الدُّنْيَا حَسَنَةً وَفِي الْاٰخِرَةِ حَسَنَةً وَقِنَا عَذَابَ النَّارِ

(O Allah, grant us goodness in this world, and goodness in the hereafter and save us from the punishment of the fire).

سُبْحَانَ اللّٰهِ وَالْحَمْدُ لِلّٰهِ وَلَا اِلٰهَ اِلَّا اللّٰهُ وَاللّٰهُ اَكْبَرُ ، وَلَا حَوْلَ وَلَا
قُوَّةَ اِلَّا بِاللّٰهِ الْعَلِيِّ الْعَظِيْمِ

(Allah is free from every Imperfection and Impurity, and everything derogatory from His glory, and all praise is due to Allah, and there is no diety worthy of worship besides Allah, and Allah is the greatest and there is no strength (to do good), no power (to abstain from sin) but with grace and mercies of Allah, the Highest and Greatest.)

Besides these, any other Du'aa could be recited. Making Zikr and reciting the Holy Qur'an are also permissible. (Women should not raise their voices whilst making Du'aa.)

9. TWO RAK'AATS WAAJIB SALAAH AFTER TAWAAF :

After completing the Tawaaf, perform two Rak'aats Waajib Salaah, behind Maqaame Ibrahim. If this is difficult, one may perform it at any other place (in the Masjid Haraam), preferably close to the Kaba.

- ◆ These two Rak'aats should not be performed during the forbidden and Makrooh times, (i.e. at sunrise, Zawaal, sunset or after Asr Salaah). For a Tawaaf performed after Asr, the two Waajib Rak'aats will be performed immediately after the three Farz of the Maghrib Salaah, and not after the Sunnah of the Maghrib Salaah.
- ◆ It is Mustahab to recite Surah Kaafiroon in the first Rak'ah and Surah Ikhlāas in the second Rak'ah.

Remember: The two Rak'aats Waajib have to be performed for every complete Tawaaf, (i.e seven circuits).

10. PROCEED TO THE MULTAZAM AND ZAM ZAM WELL:

One should now proceed to the Multazam, (the area between the elevated door (of the Kaba) and the Hajare Aswad). Embrace this place by stretching both the hands above the head and clinging to the wall of the Kaba. One should make abundant Du'aa as this is also a place for acceptance of Du'as. Shed as many tears as possible and make Du'aa most humbly and sincerely.

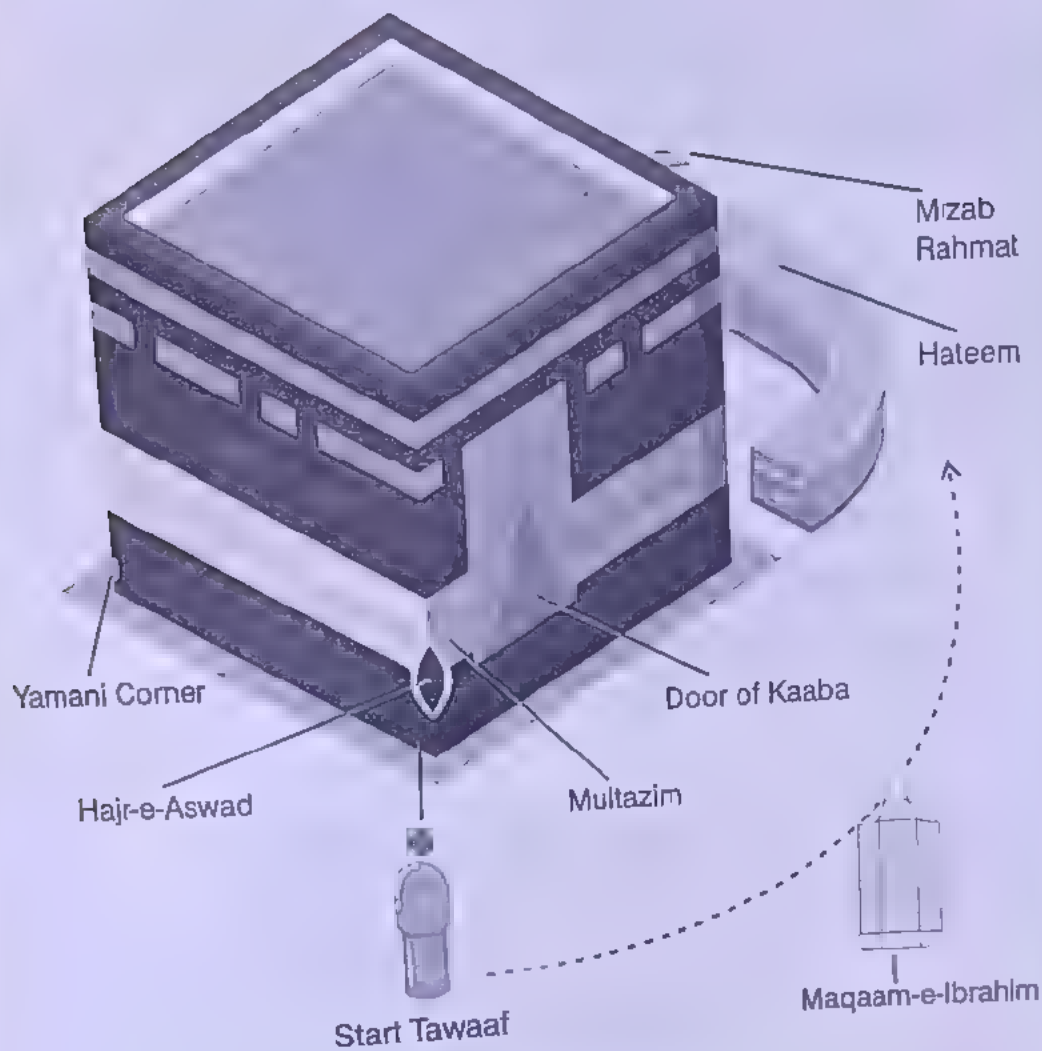
It should be remembered that, in the process, one should avoid disturbing, hurting or pushing anyone.

- ◆ After the Du'aa one should go to the well of Zam-Zam and drink as much water as is possible. When drinking Zam-Zam, stand facing the Holy Kaba, recite Bismillah and drink with the right hand. Recite the following Du'aa after drinking Zam-Zam:

اللَّهُمَّ إِنِّي أَسْأَلُكَ عِلْمًا تَأْفِئَةً وَرِزْقًا وَاسِعًا وَشِفَاءً مِنْ كُلِّ دَاءٍ.

(O Allah, I am asking You for beneficial knowledge, and abundance in provision, and cure from every ailment).

- ◆ Make a lot of Du'as at the well and also after drinking Zam Zam. This is a place and time when Du'as are accepted.



11. SA'EE BETWEEN SAFA AND MARWA:

One should now return to the Hajare Aswad and make Istilaam. While making Istilaam, say :

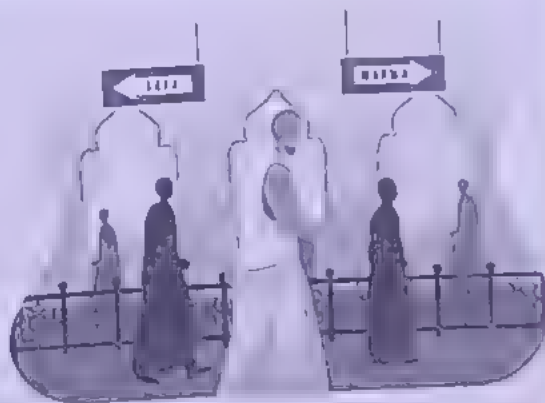
اللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ

(Allah is great, there is no deity besides Allah).

☞ **This Istilaam is Mustahab.**

- ◆ After this, proceed to Safa, (preferably through Babus-Safa) On reaching Safa, climb onto the rock and facing the Kaba, say the Niyyah, (which is Sunnah) :

اللَّهُمَّ إِنِّي أُرِيدُ السَّعْيَ بَيْنَ الصَّفَا وَالْمَرْوَةِ سَبْعَةَ أَشْوَاطٍ



بِسْمِ اللَّهِ عَزَّ وَجَلَّ فَيَسِّرْهُ لِي وَتَقَبَّلْهُ مِنِّي

(O Allah, I intend performing Sa'ee between Safa and Marwah, seven circuits for Allah, therefore, make it easy for me, and accept it from me).

After the Niyyah, raise the hands parallel to the shoulders, the palms facing the heavens (as they are raised during Du'aa), and thereafter say the TAKBEER (Allahu Akbar) and TAHLEEL (Laa ilaaha illallaah) aloud, and DUROOD Sharief silently.

- ◆ TAKBEER (Allahu Akbar) اللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ
- ◆ TAHLEEL (Laa ilaaha illallaah) لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ
- ◆ DUROOD SHAREEF اللَّهُمَّ صَلِّ عَلَى سَيِّدِنَا مُحَمَّدٍ وَعَلَى آلِ سَيِّدِنَا مُحَمَّدٍ وَبَارِكْ وَسَلِّمْ

Thereafter say :

لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ وَحْدَهُ لَا شَرِيكَ لَهُ لَهُ الْمُلْكُ وَلَهُ الْحُكْمُ يُحْيِي وَيُمِيتُ وَهُوَ عَلَى كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيرٌ. لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ وَحْدَهُ وَنَصَرَ عَبْدَهُ وَهَزَمَ الْأَحْزَابَ وَحْدَهُ.

(There is no diety besides Allah. He is alone. He has no partner, the universe belongs only to Him, and all praise is solely for Him. He alone gives life and death and He has infinite power over everything. There is no diety but Allah alone. He has fulfilled His promise, and He aided His servant (Muhammad) and defeated the allies all alone.)

- ◆ Make a lot of Du'aas here also, for this is a place where Du'aas are accepted as well. After the Du'aas, commence the Sa'ee (seven rounds between Safa and Marwa) by moving towards Marwa in the right lane. Walk at normal pace and engage in Du'aa and Zikr. Also recite the following Du'aa repeatedly.

رَبِّ اغْفِرْ وَارْحَمْ أَنْتَ الْأَعَزُّ الْأَكْرَمُ.

(My Cherisher and Sustainer, forgive and have Mercy. You are Most Powerful and Most Generous).

- ◆ On reaching Batnul-Waadi (the area between the two green columns and fluorescent lights) perform Sa'ee (slow running). Thereafter walk at a normal pace again. The females will not do the slow

running between the two green columns.

- ◆ On reaching Marwah, do exactly the same as was done at Safa. Marwah is also a place where Du'as are certainly accepted.
- ◆ One Shawt (circuit round) is now complete. Coming from Safa to Marwah is considered one Shawt, and returning to Safa another. Complete all seven Shawts at Safa and completing the seventh Shawt at Marwah, not forgetting to perform Sa'ee at Batnul Waadi in each Shawt. Engage in Du'aa between Safa and Marwah as they are accepted by Allah. After completing the seven Shawts (circuits), perform two Rak'aats Nafl Salaah.

NOTE : To perform the Sa'ee immediately after the Tawaaf is Sunnah. It is permissible to delay the Sa'ee due to tiredness or other circumstances. However, delaying without any valid Shar'ee reason will render the Sa'ee Makrooh.

12. TWO RAK'AATS NAFL SALAAH :

Perform two Rak'aats Nafl Salaah on the boundary of the Mataaf (the area where Tawaaf is performed). If these two Rak'aats are omitted, there will be no harm. After completing the Salaah, or the seven Shawts, it becomes Waajib to shave or trim the hair of the head, (if one wishes to release his Ihraam).

TRIMMING OR SHAVING OF THE HEAD:

Great care must be taken regarding this Mas'alah, for at times some hair remain shorter than the other.

- ◆ After the Sa'ee, in order to release the Ihraam, it is Waajib to shave or trim the hair of the entire head to length of the first joint of the fore finger. The hair should be trimmed more than this as some hair remain longer than the other. Thus, by trimming more, the shorter hair will also be trimmed as much as the length of a fore finger.

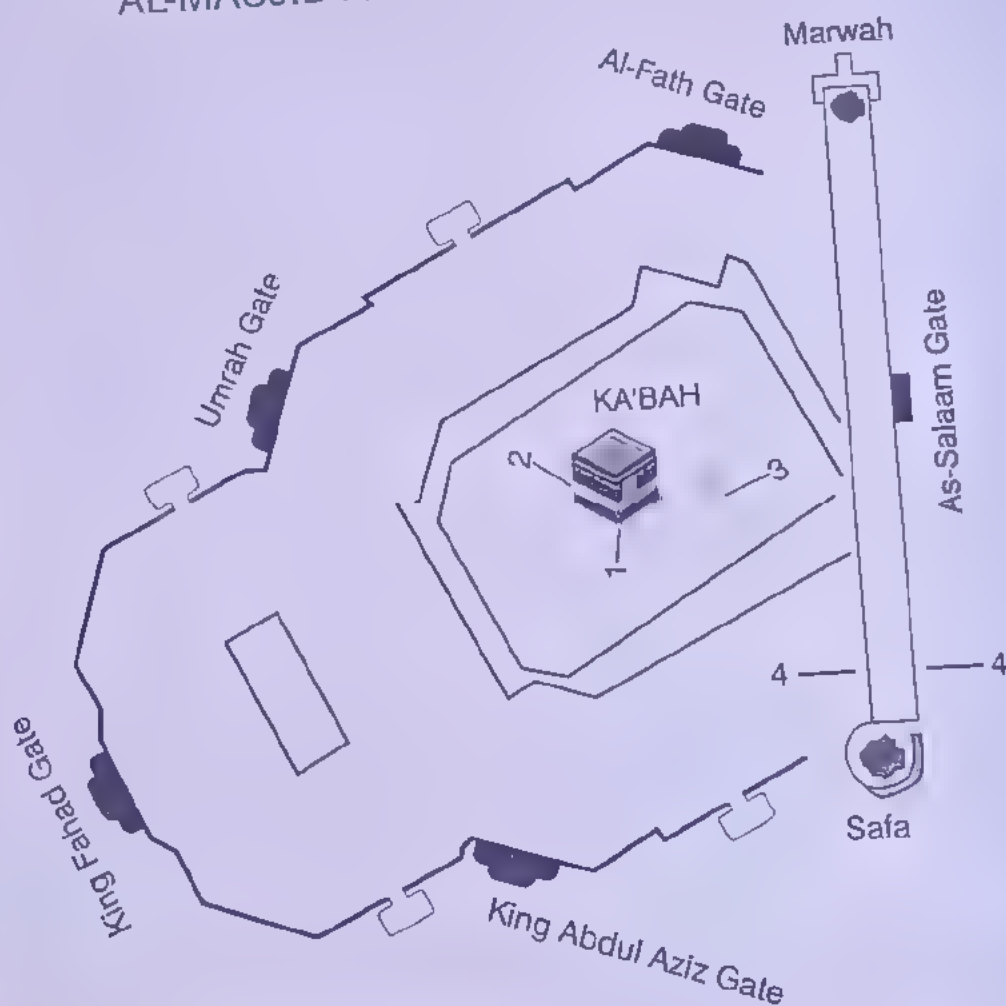
It is Waajib for a bald person or a person who has wounds on his head to simply pass the razor over the head.

- ◆ The FEMALES will not shave their heads. According to Shar'i'ah it is unlawful and Haraam for them to do so. In order to release herself from their Ihraam, a woman is only permitted to have her hair trimmed. The best method is that her hair be divided into three

parts, keeping one section on back. Thereafter hold each section separately and trim as much as the first joint of the fore finger (a little more than 1-inch) from each section. The womenfolk must have their hair trimmed in privacy, and not on the streets, or the hairdresser. A non-Mahram is not permitted to trim, touch or even look at their hair. A Mahram who is no longer a Muharim could do the trimming for her. She cannot trim her own hair to release herself from the Ihraam.

- ◆ The shaving or trimming of the hair is the last of the actions of Umrah. All the restrictions imposed because of the Ihraam, will now be lifted. The Umrah is now complete. (Allah knows best)

AL-MASJID AL-HARAAM (Makkah)



1. Start Tawaf (Hajr-e-Aswad)
2. Yamani Corner
3. Maqaam-e-Ibrahim
4. Fast Walking Area

AN IMPOR

لَا يَتَقَى وَلَا يَخْشَى
سُتَجِيزُ الْوَجْدِ
وَابْتَهَلَ إِلَيْكَ
أَيُّ مَنْ خَصَفَتْ
تَفَهُ. اللَّهُمَّ لَا
لِيْنِ وَيَا خَدَّ

O my Alla
and positi
and that v
you I am
four three
Your prot
accept m
who has
disgrace
with You
d one
sa flow
and rul
no de
O
ost

رسول اللہ صلی اللہ علیہ وسلم کی ایک خاص دعاء

AN IMPORTANT DU'AA OF RASULULLAH (ﷺ)

اَللّٰهُمَّ اِنَّكَ تَسْمَعُ كَلَامِي وَتَرَى مَكَانِي وَتَعْلَمُ سِرِّي وَعَلَانِيَتِي وَلَا يَخْفَى عَلَيْكَ شَيْءٌ مِنْ اَمْرِي وَاَنَا الْبَائِسُ الْفَقِيرُ الْمُسْتَغِيثُ الْمُسْتَجِيرُ الْوَجِلُ الْمُسْفِقُ الْمَقْرُّ الْمُعْتَرِفُ بِذُنُوبِي. اَسْأَلُكَ مَسْئَلَةَ الْمُسْكِينِ وَابْتَهِلُ اِلَيْكَ ابْتِهَالَ الْمَذِيبِ الدَّلِيلِ وَاَدْعُوكَ دُعَاءَ الْخَائِفِ الصَّرِيرِ وَدُعَاءَ مَنْ خَضَعَتْ لَكَ رَقَبَتُهُ وَقَاصَتْ لَكَ عِبْرَتُهُ وَذَلَّ لَكَ جِسْمُهُ وَرَغِمَ لَكَ اَنْفُهُ. اَللّٰهُمَّ لَا تَجْعَلْنِي بِدُعَائِكَ شَقِيًّا وَكُنْ لِي رَوْقًا رَحِيمًا، يَا خَيْرَ الْمُسْتُوْلِيْنَ وَيَا خَيْرَ الْمُعْطِيْنَ.

(O my Allah! You listen to my speech and You see my condition and position, You are aware of that which is concealed of me and that which is evident None of my matters are hidden from You I am afflicted with hardship and distress (misery), needy (of Your threshold), I lodge my complaints only to You, I seek only Your protection, I am overcome by Your fear, I acknowledge and accept my sins and shortcomings. I beg of You like that destitute who has no support and is lonely. I plead in Your presence like a disgraced sinner. I pray to You, the prayer of one who is overcome with Your fear and is afflicted with pain and distress, like the prayer of one whose head is hung down before You and whose tears are flowing in Your presence, whose body is humbled before You and rubbing his nose before You O Allah! Do not reject my prayer and deprive me and be beneficent to me and have mercy upon me O He who is the best and the greatest Giver. O He who is the most Generous.)

Note

Ta'le

تَعْلِيمُ الْحَقِّ
Ta'leemul Haq

زیارتِ مدینہ
Ziyaarat
-e-
Madinah

15

VISIT TO MADINA MUNAWWARA

بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم

نحمده ونصلي ونسلم على رسوله سيدنا محمد خاتم النبيين

- ◆ ZIYAARAT or presenting one's self in the Sacred Court of Rasulullah (ﷺ) at Madinah Munawwarah is indeed among the greatest blessings and fortunes. Whoever is blessed with the opportunity of making Ziyaarat of Nabi-e-Kareem (ﷺ) should have an understanding of the tremendous significance and the wonderful fortune of this Sacred Visit. A windfall of the greatest Sawaab has come his way. He must, therefore, acquire the maximum benefit from this golden opportunity which Allah Ta'ala has bestowed on him.
- ◆ Many people, due to lack of knowledge, lack of proper understanding of the importance of the Ziyaarat or through negligence ruin this great chance of gaining the great and wonderful spiritual benefits and Sawaab attendant to the Ziyaarat.
- ◆ After studying these few pages on "Ziyaarat", one will realise the importance and procedure of the Ziyaarat, thereby acquiring maximum benefit from this Sacred Visit. May Allah Ta'ala fill our hearts with the true love of Rasulullah (ﷺ), a love which will manifest itself in our practical life in the assertion and dominance of the Sunnah of Rasulullah (ﷺ)
- ◆ Rasulullah (ﷺ) has mentioned: "My Shafa'at (intercession) is Waajib (obligatory) for the one who visits my grave"
- ◆ "Verily, he who made Hajj and refrained from visiting me (i.e my Qabr) has rendered me an injustice"
- ◆ Ziyaarat of Rasulullah's (ﷺ) holy Qabr (grave) is the highest of Mustahab acts. Therefore those who proceed for Hajj should consider it incumbent upon themselves to make the Ziyaarat. In order to understand the importance and significance of the journey to Madinah Munawwarah, it is necessary to cite some Ahaadith of Rasulullaah (ﷺ). As long as the significance, sanctity and

importance of Madinah Munawwarah are not embedded in the heart, the visitor will not be in position to correctly discharge the rights of the Sacred Visit to the Holy City.

Rasulullah (ﷺ) said:

1. The La'nat (curse) of Allah, of the Malaa'ikah and of all creation descends on a person who introduces a Bid'ah (innovation) in Madinah or gives refuge to a Bid'ati (innovator) In Madinah. Neither the Farz or Nafl (acts of Ibaadat) of such a person is accepted.
2. "..... I will be the intercessor for the mu'min who patiently bears the hardships and hunger (which he may encounter) in Madinah."
3. "I was commanded to make Hijrat (migrate) to a city which overwhelms all cities. Madinah Munawwarah drives away evil from people like a furnace purifies steel."
4. "He who deceives the people of Madinah will recede into insignificance like salt is dissolved by water."
5. "Among the lands of Islam, the very last city to be destroyed will be Madinah."

◆ Numerous Ahaadith regarding the sanctity significance and excellence of Madinah Tayyibah have been narrated. It has been mentioned in the Ahaadith that in the sands of Madinah Tayyibah is a cure for every disease.

◆ Hazrat Shaikh Abdul Haqq Muhaddith Dehlwi (رحمہ اللہ) mentions: "When I was in Madinah Tayyibah my feet were swollen. I used the blessed sand as treatment for my ailment. Within a few days I was cured."

◆ In view of the sanctity and significance of Madinah Tayyibah it is essential to respect and honour the people of Madinah Tayyibah. Rasulallah (ﷺ) has mentioned regarding the inhabitants of Madinah Tayyibah : "My Ummah should protect the honour and dignity of my neighbours. My Ummah must not be deficient in fulfilling their rights. Overlook their faults as long as they abstain from major sins. He who PROTECTS THEIR HONOUR, I SHALL BE HIS WITNESS ON THE DAY OF QIYAAMA."

◆ Those who disrespect the people of Madinah Munawwarah or quarrel with them should take heed to the following warning of Rasulallah (ﷺ):

- ◆ "He who dishonours the people of Madinah will be given to drink from Teenatul Khabal."
- ◆ "Teenatul Khabal" is a pond in Jahannam where the blood, evil fluids and impurities of the inmates of Fire will accumulate.
- ◆ "He who frightens the people of Madinah Tayyibah is like a person who frightens me. Neither his Farz nor his Nafil is accepted."

From the few statements of Rasulullah (ﷺ) which have been cited above, one will be able to understand the holiness and greatness of Madinah Munawwarah and its inhabitants. One therefore has to regard the opportunity to visit the Sacred Raudah (Grave) of Rasulullah (ﷺ) as a great fortune. One must therefore spend every moment in Madinah Tayyibah constructively so as to obtain maximum benefit and Sawaab.

To gain the wonderful rewards of the Ziyaarat it is important that one consciously guards the heart, tongue and limbs. Abstain totally from all evil, unnecessary acts and discussions. One should speak only when necessary.

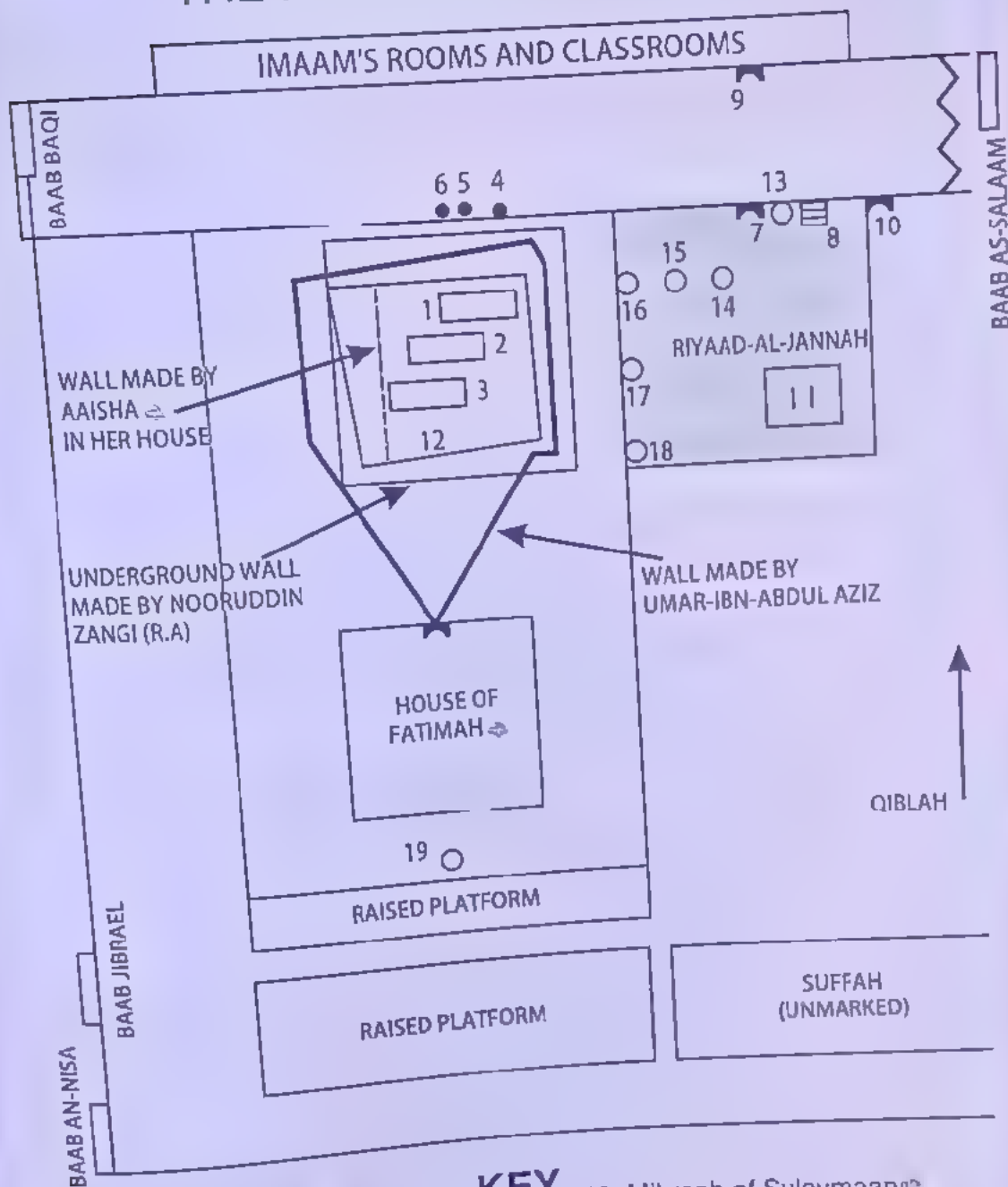
ZIYAARAT OF THE SACRED QABR

Although it is permissible to render the Ziyaarat before or after the Hajj, the following course is the best:

- If the Hajj is Farz, it is best to make the Ziyaarat after completing the Hajj.
- If it is a Nafil Hajj, Ziyaarat made before or after the Hajj will be of the same merit.
- Those who approach Makkah Mukarramah from the direction of Madinah Munawwarah, i.e. they will first pass Madinah Tayyibah, should render the Ziyaarat before Hajj.

The visitor must constantly remind himself that he is not on a holiday tour. This is no ordinary visit. He is on a holy journey and is, therefore, bound to observe all rules, respects and etiquettes of the sacred visit. He must at no time indulge in any act or discussion which despoils or detracts from the sacredness and Sawaab of the holy visit.

THE PROPHET ﷺ'S MASJID



KEY

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Grave of Nabi ﷺ | 10. Mihrab of Sulaymaan |
| 2. Grave of Abu Bakr | 11. Raised Platform for Adhaan |
| 3. Grave of Umar | 12. House of Aalsha |
| 4. Marker to Nabi's Face | 13. Hannaanah |
| 5. Marker to Abu Bakr's Face | 14. Aalsha |
| 6. Marker to Umar's Face | 15. Abu Lubaabah |
| 7. Mihrab and Musallah of Nabi ﷺ | 16. Sareer |
| 8. Marker to Mimbar of Nabi ﷺ | 17. Ali |
| 9. Present Mihrab | 18. Wulood |
| | 19. Jibrael (Tahajjud is near this) |

THE NIYYAT

When about to set out for the journey to Madinah Tayyibah make the Niyyat, i.e. form on Intention of Ziyaarat of Raudha-e-Aqdas (the Holiest Grave) as well as of Masjide Nabawi. This form of Niyyat is best.

EN ROUTE TO MADINAH TAYYIBAH

Along the journey to Madinah Munawwarah recite Durood Shareef in abundance. In fact, spend all available time, other than the time engaged in Farz acts, reciting Durood Shareef. In this way endeavour to imbue eagerness and enthusiasm within the heart for the Ziyaarat.

On the way to Madinah Munawwarah visit all the holy places one may pass. Perform Salaah in the Masjid which are specifically related to Rasulullah (ﷺ) and the Sahaabah (رضي الله عنهم). Drink of the waters of the holy wells along the road to Madinah Tayyibah.

As one nears Madinah Tayyibah, the recitation of Durood Shareef should be increased. Endeavour to imbue in the heart love and fervour for the Ziyaarat. If one is unable to induce such feelings physically in the heart, then at least attempt to create such a mental state. Rasulullah (ﷺ) must be foremost in the mind.

When the gaze first falls on the trees and buildings of Madinah Tayyibah, recited Durood Shareef much and make Du'aa. It is best to dismount from the vehicle and walk on foot, if this is possible. It is best to proceed bare footed and shedding tears.

Upon reaching the boundary of Madinah Munawwarah, recite Durood Shareef :

اللَّهُمَّ صَلِّ عَلَى سَيِّدِنَا مُحَمَّدٍ وَعَلَى آلِ سَيِّدِنَا مُحَمَّدٍ وَبَارِكْ وَسَلِّمْ.

and the following Du'aa :

اللَّهُمَّ هَذَا حَرَمُ نَبِيِّكَ فَاجْعَلْهُ وَقَايَةً لِي مِنَ النَّارِ وَأَمَانًا
مِّنَ الْعَذَابِ وَسُوءِ الْحِسَابِ.

(O' Allah! This is Your Prophet's Sanctuary therefore make it a protection for me from the fire and a safety from punishment and an evil reckoning.)

If possible, take ghusl before entering the city. If this is not possible, take ghusl after having entered the city. If for some reason. This too is not possible, perform Wudhu. Ghusl is Afzal (best). Put on clean garments and if possible, new garments.

This Du'aa should be recited as one enters the City Gates:

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ مَا شَاءَ اللَّهُ لَا قُوَّةَ إِلَّا بِاللَّهِ، رَبِّ ادْخِلْنِي مُدْخَلَ صِدْقٍ
وَأَخْرِجْنِي مُخْرَجَ صِدْقٍ وَارْزُقْنِي مِنْ زِيَارَةِ رَسُولِكَ مَا رَزَقْتَ
أَوْلِيَاءَكَ وَأَهْلَ طَاعَتِكَ وَانْقِذْنِي مِنَ النَّارِ وَاعْفِرْ لِي وَارْحَمْنِي يَا
خَيْرَ مُسْتَوِلٍ، اللَّهُمَّ اجْعَلْ لَنَا فِيهَا قَرَارًا وَرِزْقًا حَسَنًا.

INSIDE MADINAH TAYYIBAH

When the gaze falls on the Sacred Green Dome, contemplate its sanctity and nobility. This is the holiest place. After having entered the City, endeavour to enter Masjid Nabawi first.

It is best for WOMEN to make Ziyaarat during the night.

Enter the Masjid with the right foot and with utmost humility and reverence. This Du'aa should be recited when entering:

اللَّهُمَّ صَلِّ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ وَصَحْبِهِ وَسَلِّمْ، اللَّهُمَّ اغْفِرْ لِي ذُنُوبِي
وَافْتَحْ لِي أَبْوَابَ رَحْمَتِكَ.

One may enter the Masjid-e-Nabawi from any entrance one desires. However, it is of greater merit to enter through the entrance known as Baabe Jibra'eel.

Inside the Masjid perform two rak'aat Tahyatul Masjid in the area known as Raudhah. This is the area between the Mimbar and the Holy Grave of Rasulullah (ﷺ). In the first Rak'ah recite Surah Faatihah and Surah "Qul Yaa Ayyuhal Kaafoor". In the second Rak'ah after Surah

Faatihah recite Surah Qul Huwallahu Ahad. Speaking on the significance of the area known as the Raudhah, Rasulullah (ﷺ) said:

"Between my home and my Mimbar is a garden of the Gardens of Jannah."

Although it is Afzal (best and of greater merit) to perform the two Rak'aat Tahyatul Masjid in the Mihraab of Nabi (ﷺ), one may perform it anywhere in the Raudhah, wherever one finds place. After this Salaah, engage in Hamd, Sana and Shukr. Thereafter make Du'aa for the acceptance of the Ziyaarat. Then, again perform two rak'aat Salaatush-Shukr which is Salaah performed in gratitude to Allah Ta'aala for having blessed one with the great favour of Ziyaarat.

If at the time of entry into the Masjid, Jamaa'ah of Farz Salaah has begun or there is fear of one's Salaah to begin or there is fear of one's Salaah becoming Qazaa, then perform the Farz Salaah first. In this case do not engage in Tahyatul-Masjid. One's Tahyatul-Masjid will be incorporated into the Farz Salaah. By joining in the Farz Salaah, Tahyatul-Masjid will be rendered as well.

THE WAY OF RECITING SALAAM AT THE HOLY RAUDHAH (GRAVE) OF THE SEAL OF AMBIYAA (PROPHETS), HAZRAT MUHAMMAD MUSTAFA (ﷺ)

After Tahyatul Masjid proceed to the Sacred Qabr of Rasulullah (ﷺ) with much reverence, humility, eagerness and respect. Banish all affairs and thoughts of the world from the heart and mind, and brace yourself for your presence in the Court of the Leader of Mankind, our beloved Rasulullah (ﷺ).

- ◆ Stand about a metre from the pillar which is located at the corner of the wall at the head-side of the Holy Qabr.
- ◆ Stand with the back towards the Qiblah and move slightly to the left so that you directly face the Holiest of Faces.
- ◆ Do not cast your gaze all over.
- ◆ Do not raise your voice.

- ◆ Adopt an attitude of utmost respect and awe.
- ◆ It is not respectful to cast the gaze all over.
- ◆ Do not do anything disrespectful.
- ◆ Do not stand very close to the Holy Qabr.
- ◆ Do not touch the wire-mesh enclosure.
- ◆ Do not kiss or make Sajdah.
- ◆ While standing there, picture in mind that Rasulullah (ﷺ) is reclining, facing the Qiblah inside the Holy Qabr and that he is listening to the Salaams which are being recited.
- ◆ Recite the Salaam in a moderate tone, neither silently, softly nor too loudly.

SALAAM

On HAZRAT MUHAMMAD MUSTAFA (ﷺ)

Recite the SALAAM in the following way:

السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكَ يَا رَسُولَ اللَّهِ! السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكَ يَا حَبِيبَ اللَّهِ!
السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكَ يَا خَيْرَ خَلْقِ اللَّهِ! السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكَ يَا خَيْرَةَ
اللَّهُ مِنْ جَمِيعِ خَلْقِ اللَّهِ! السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكَ يَا سَيِّدَ وَلَدِ آدَمَ،
السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكَ أَيُّهَا النَّبِيُّ وَرَحْمَةُ اللَّهِ وَبَرَكَاتُهُ، يَا رَسُولَ
اللَّهُ! إِنِّي أَشْهَدُ أَنْ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ وَحْدَهُ لَا شَرِيكَ لَهُ وَأَشْهَدُ
أَنَّكَ عَبْدُهُ وَرَسُولُهُ وَأَشْهَدُ أَنَّكَ يَا رَسُولَ اللَّهِ! قَدْ بَلَغْتَ
الرِّسَالَةَ وَادَّيْتَ الْأَمَانَةَ، وَنَصَحْتَ الْأُمَّةَ وَكَشَفْتَ الْغُمَّةَ،
فَجَزَاكَ اللَّهُ عَنَّا خَيْرًا، جَزَاكَ اللَّهُ عَنَّا أَفْضَلَ وَأَكْمَلَ مَا جَزَى
بِهِ نَبِيًّا عَنْ أُمَّتِهِ. اللَّهُمَّ آتِهِ الْوَسِيلَةَ وَالْفَضِيلَةَ وَالذَّرَجَةَ
الرَّفِيعَةَ وَابْعَثْهُ الْمَقَامَ الْمَحْمُودَ الَّذِي وَعَدْتَهُ إِنَّكَ لَا
تُخْلِفُ الْمِيعَادَ، وَأَنْزِلْهُ الْمَنْزِلَ الْمُقَرَّبَ عِنْدَكَ، إِنَّكَ

سُبْحَانَكَ ذُو الْفَضْلِ الْعَظِيمِ

(Peace and blessings be upon you O' Messenger of Allah. Peace and blessings be upon you O' Beloved of Allah. Peace and blessing be upon you O' Best Creation of Allah. Peace and blessing be upon you, O' Master, son of Adam. Peace be upon you, O Prophet, and God's mercy and blessings be upon you. O' Prophet of Allah! I bear witness that there is none worthy of worship besides Allah, Who is Alone and has no partner. And I also bear witness that You are His Slave and Messenger. You have conveyed the message, fulfilled the trust, advised the community, and removed the grief, so may Allah reward you on our behalf. May Allah reward You on our behalf better than which Allah rewarded any Prophet on behalf of his ummah. Oh Allah grant him the means and the favor and the high ranking and raise him to the praised status which You promised him. Indeed You never fail in Your promises. And allow him to dwell on the close dwelling near You. Indeed You, Glory be to You, are the Owner of the mighty favors.)

After the Salaam one should make Du'a, invoking the Waseelah (agency) of Rasulullah (ﷺ), i.e. one should make Du'aa to Allah Ta'ala asking Him (Allah Ta'ala) to accept the Du'aa through the Waseelah of Nabl-e-Kareem (ﷺ). Make a request for the Shafa'at (intercession) of Rasulullah (ﷺ) in the following manner:

يَا رَسُولَ اللَّهِ أَسْأَلُكَ الشَّفَاعَةَ وَأَتَوَسَّلُ بِكَ إِلَى اللَّهِ فِي أَنْ
أَمُوتَ مُسْلِمًا عَلَى مِلَّتِكَ وَسُنَّتِكَ

(O Rasulullah! I ask you for Shafaa'at (intercession) and I supplicate Allah Ta'ala through your Waseelah that I die as a Muslim, steadfast on your Millat and your Sunnah.)

It is not compulsory to recite the above Salaam formula. One may recite any other form of Salaam one desires. If one cannot remember any long form of Salaam, one may recite whatever one remembers of it. The minimum requirement for Salaam is to say:

الْسَّلَامُ عَلَيْكَ يَا رَسُولَ اللَّهِ

- ◆ If one has been requested to convey someone's Salaams to Rasulullah (ﷺ), he should convey the Salaams of the person (who requested him to do so), in the following way :

السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكَ يَا رَسُولَ اللَّهِ مِنْ يَسْتَشْفِعُ بِكَ إِلَى رَبِّكَ

(Salaam upon you, O Rasulallah! from (Mention the name of the person). He seeks your intercession by your Rabb.)

While conveying the Salaams of that person recite his name after the word (min), which appears in the Arabic Salaam, above.

- ◆ If several people have requested that their Salaams be conveyed to Rasulallah (ﷺ), one should do so in the following manner:

السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكَ يَا رَسُولَ اللَّهِ مِنْ جَمِيعِ مَنْ أَوْصَانِي بِالسَّلَامِ عَلَيْكَ

(Salaam upon you, O Rasulallah, from all those who had requested me to convey Salaams to you.)

- ◆ On the right side of the Holy Qabr of Rasulallah (ﷺ) is the QABR of Hazrat ABU BAKR Siddique (رضي الله عنه)

Move slightly to the right and while standing in line with the holy face of Hazrat Abu Bakr (رضي الله عنه), recite Salaam on him in the following manner:

SALAAM

On Hazrat Abu Bakr Siddique (رضي الله عنه)

السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكَ يَا خَلِيفَةَ رَسُولِ اللَّهِ وَثَانِيَهُ فِي الْغَارِ وَرَفِيقَهُ فِي الْأَسْفَارِ أَمِينَهُ عَلَى الْأَسْرَارِ أَبَا بَكْرٍ الصِّدِّيقِ جَزَاكَ اللَّهُ عَنْ أُمَّةٍ مُحَمَّدٍ خَيْرًا.

- ◆ On the right of Hazrat Abu Bakr's (رضي الله عنه) grave is the QABR of Hazrat UMAR (رضي الله عنه)

Stand facing Hazrat Umar (رضي الله عنه) and recite Salaam as follows:

SALAAM On Hazrat Umar (رضي الله عنه)

السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكَ يَا أَمِيرَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ عُمَرَ الْفَارُوقَ الَّذِي أَعَزَّ
اللَّهُ بِهِ الْإِسْلَامَ إِمَامَ الْمُسْلِمِينَ مَرْضِيًّا حَيًّا وَمَمِيًّا جَزَاكَ
اللَّهُ عَنْ أُمَّةٍ مُحَمَّدٍ خَيْرًا صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ.

One is at liberty to recite lengthier or shorter formulae of Salaams.

- ◆ According to some Ulama, after completing the Salaam on Hazrat Umar (رضي الله عنه), one should move to a position between the two graves of these two Khulafaa of Rasulallah (صلى الله عليه وسلم) and renew the Salaam as follows:

السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكُمَا يَا صَبِيْعَي رَسُوْلِ اللهِ صَلَّى اللهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ
وَوَزِيْرِيْهِ جَزَاكُمَا اللهُ أَحْسَنَ الْجَزَاءِ جِئْنَاكُمَا نَتَوَسَّلُ بِكُمَا
إِلَى رَسُوْلِ اللهِ صَلَّى اللهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ لِيَشْفَعَ لَنَا وَيَدْعُوَ لَنَا
رَبَّنَا أَنْ يُحْيِيَنَا عَلَى مِلَّتِهِ وَسُنَّتِهِ وَيَحْشُرَنَا فِي زُمْرَتِهِ وَجَمِيعِ
الْمُسْلِمِيْنَ، آمِيْنَ.

- ◆ Thereafter, face the Holy Qabr of Rasulallah (صلى الله عليه وسلم) and once again renew the recitation of Salaam on Rasulallah (صلى الله عليه وسلم). Then recite Hamd and Sana (praises of the Almighty Allah); then Durood Shareef and make Du'aa to Allah Ta'ala, invoking the Waseelah of Rasulallah (صلى الله عليه وسلم). Again request for Rasulallah's (صلى الله عليه وسلم) Shafaa'at. When making Du'aa, raise both the hands. One's Du'aa should be for one's self, parents, Mashaa'ikh (spiritual leaders), family, relatives, friends and for all the Muslims in general. After the Salaam, it is best to say as follows :

يَا رَسُوْلَ اللهِ صَلَّى عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ قَدْ قَالَ اللهُ تَعَالَى سُبْحَانَهُ وَلَوْ
أَنَّهُمْ إِذْ ظَلَمُوا أَنْفُسَهُمْ جَاءُوكَ فَاسْتَغْفَرُوا اللهَ وَاسْتَغْفَرَ
لَهُمُ الرَّسُوْلُ لَوَجَدُوا اللهَ تَوَّابًا رَّحِيْمًا. فَجِئْنَاكَ ظَالِمِيْنَ

لَا تُفْسِدْنَا مُسْتَغْفِرِينَ مِنْ ذُنُوبِنَا فَاشْفَعْ لَنَا إِلَى رَبِّنَا
وَاسْأَلْهُ أَنْ يُمَيِّتَنَا عَلَى سُنَّتِكَ وَأَنْ يُحْشِرَنَا فِي زُمْرَتِكَ.

- ◆ After having made the Ziyaarat, go to the pillar known as the Pillar of Abi Lubaabah Perform two rak'aat Nafl Salaah there and make Du'a. Then come into the area known as Raudah and perform Nafl Salaah in any quantity one desires. However, do not perform any Salaah if it is a Makrooh time Recite Durood Shareef here in abundance and make Du'a.

Thereafter proceed to the Mimbar, place the hands on it; recite Durood Shareef and make Du'a. Then go to the pillar known as the Pillar of Hanaanah. Make Du'aa and recite Istighfaar (repent). Do the same at other pillars. One may now return to his place of residence.

One should consider the time available in Madinah Munawwarah as a golden opportunity. One should therefore spend most of his time in Masjide Nabawi. When in the Masjid, make Niyyah (Intention) for I'tikaaf. Nafl I'tikaaf is for any duration. Nafl I'tikaaf for even a minute is valid. Therefore, whenever one is inside the Masjid, Niyyat for Nafl I'tikaaf should be made. Endeavour to complete the Qur'an Shareef (make Khatm) in the Masjid.

One should give Sadaqah according to one's means. Honour and respect the poor, the Caretakers of the Holy Places and all the inhabitants of Madinah Tayyibah. Treat them with respect. Deal with them with love and kindness. Honouring them is honouring and pleasing Rasulullah (ﷺ). Even if they are perhaps unjust or unkind, bear it with patience. Do not quarrel and dispute. When buying and selling with them, make the Niyyah of aiding them. Such a Niyyah merits Sawaab.

Endeavour to be present at Masjid-e-Nabawi five times daily. One should ensure that one's back is not towards the Holy Grave, whether performing Salaah or not. Whenever passing by the Holy Qabr, recite Salaams, even if it be a short Salaam and even if one happens to be outside the Masjid.

OTHER PLACES OF ZIYAARAT

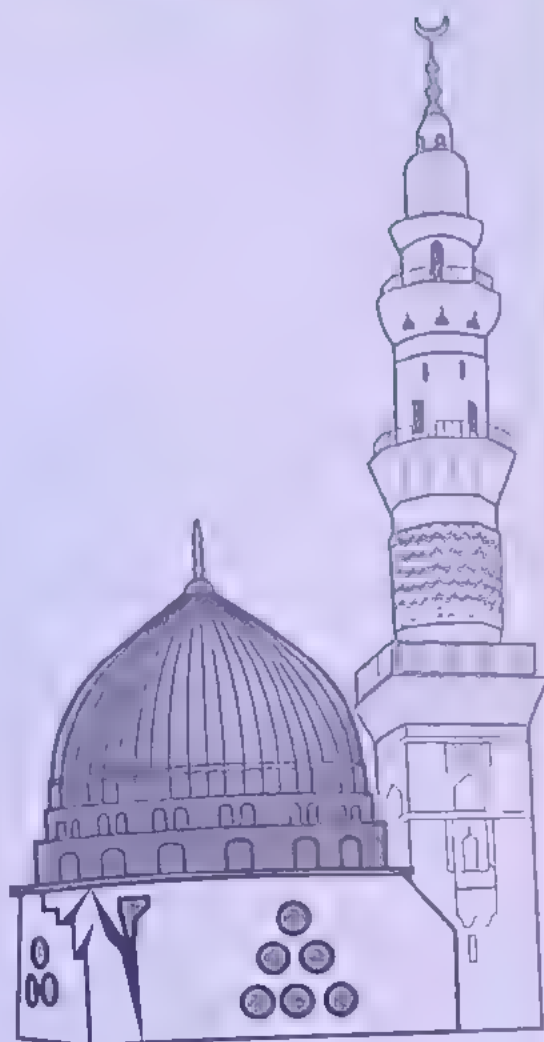
It is Mustahab (preferable) to also visit the Qabrastaan (cemetery) known as Jannatul Baqi' where the graves of the Sahaabah-e-Kiraam (رضي الله عنهم) and of members of Rasulullah's (ﷺ) Family are. Make a point of visiting the Qabr of Sayyidush Shuhadaa (The Leader of the Martyrs), Hazrat Humzah (رضي الله عنه).

Visit Masjid-e-Quba as well as other Masjids. Visit the holy wells and drink of their water.



THE DEPARTURE

After one has completed the Ziyaarat and intends to depart, one should do so from Masjid-e-Nabawi after performing Salaah and making Du'aa. If possible, perform the departing Salaah of 2 Rak'aat Nafl on or near the Musalla of Rasulullah ﷺ. If this is not possible, perform it wherever place is available in the Masjid. After this, proceed to the Sacred Raudah (Grave) of Rasulullah ﷺ. Recite Salaam on Rasulullah ﷺ and thereafter make Du'aa in all earnestness. One's Du'aa should cover all Deen as well as worldly needs and desires. One should make Du'aa for one's self, family, relatives and all Muslims. Make Du'aa for the acceptance of one's Ibaadat and for steadfastness on Deen. Make Du'aa for a death on Iman (Belief) and for a safe return home.



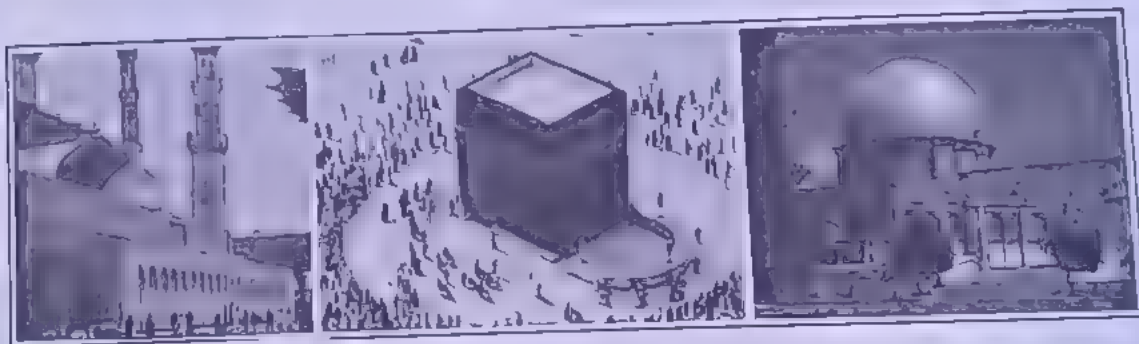
Among the signs of the acceptance of one's efforts and Ibaadat is the ready flow of tears. If one is unable to shed tears, recite such Du'aas which induce tenderness in the heart and also make an attempt to shed some tears. With a heart stricken with grief and sorrow at the impending separation, take leave. Do not move backwards when leaving because such action is exclusive for the Kaba. Depart in sadness, giving Sadaqah (charity) to the poor of Madinah Tayyibah liberally. While reciting the Du'aa of Safar (journey), walk away. One should take along some dates and water of the seven wells as Tabarrukaal

TRADITIONS ABOUT MASJID NABAWI (ﷺ)

One who can afford it should also Visit MADINAH MUNAWWARAH before or after Hajj Gain blessings by visiting the sacred Tomb of Rasulullah (ﷺ) and his Masjid (Masjid-e-Nabawi). Nabi (ﷺ) has mentioned that "one who visits my grave after my demise will gain the same blessing as if he had seen me during my lifetime." Rasulullah (ﷺ) further mentioned that "one who merely performed Hajj and did not visit my grave, has done great injustice to me."

Sayyidina Rasulullah (ﷺ) is reported to have mentioned :

1. "One who offers one Salaah in this Masjid (Masjid-e-Nabawi), shall receive the reward equivalent to fifty thousand Salaah."
2. "Whoever performs forty Salaah in my Masjid, not missing one Salaah (in the Masjid), for him is freedom from the fires of Jahannam; and freedom from punishment and he shall be free from hypocrisy."
3. "One for whom it is possible to die in Madinah (live there till the end of his life), should die there, for I shall intercede on behalf of all those who die there."
4. "One should undertake a journey only to three Masjids (with the intention of Ziyaarat):
 - ◆ Masjid-e-Haraam (Mukkah Mukarramah),
 - ◆ Masjid-e-Aqsa (Jerusalem) and
 - ◆ to this Masjid of mine (Masjid-e-Nabawi)".



QUESTIONS

1. What are the five pillars of Islaam?
2. What does Hajj mean to a Muslim?
3. What is the translation of the verse wherein Allah Ta'aala has made Hajj Farz?
4. Mention three Ahadeeth of Rasoolullah (ﷺ) regarding Hajj.
5. Mention the conditions that make Hajj Farz.
6. Who is a Mahram?
7. If a person has sufficient funds to travel to Makkah Mukarramah only, not for Madinah Munawwarah, will Hajj still become Farz upon such a person?
8. It is permissible to travel with a Mahram who is a minor?
9. What is the ruling regarding a Mahram who is Irreligious and cannot be trusted?
10. Can the husband refuse permission once a suitable Mahram is found?
11. What should a woman do if she cannot find a suitable Mahram all her life?
12. What is Hajje Badal?
13. If the heirs have to fulfill the Hajje Badal, how will this be done?
14. If one-third of the estate was not sufficient, what will happen?
15. Is it proper for a woman in 'Iddat to perform Haj?
16. How should a woman in Ihraam cover her face?
17. Mention the three types of Hajj.
18. Explain the different types of Hajj.
19. Which Hajj is considered the best according to the Hanafee school of thought?
20. The Hajj itself is performed in (5,7,9) days?
21. Explain what rites have to be performed on each of these days.
22. Explain the following terms:
a) Ramee b) Zabih c) Halq d) Wuqoof e) Ihraam.
23. It is (Farz, Waajib, Sunnate Muakkadah) to perform Umrah once in a lifetime.

24. When can one perform Umrah?
25. An Umrah in the month of _____ is superior to an Umrah performed in any other month
26. If a person completes only three circuits of Tawaaf, will the Umrah be accepted? State a reason for your answer.
27. Mention the Faraa-idh of Umrah.
28. Mention the Waajibaat of Umrah.
29. Outline the procedure of Umrah in brief.
30. What is an Ihraam?
31. Where should the Ihraam be put on?
32. Can any sewn garment be worn with the Ihraam?
33. What is the Ihraam for males? (Explain in detail).
34. What is the Ihraam for women?
35. What should be done after putting on the Ihraam?
36. Write down and translate the Niyyah for Umrah and the Talbiyah.
37. Who is a Muhrim and when does one become a Muhrim?
38. Mention five acts from which a Muhrim should keep himself away.
39. Mention three things a Muhrim is permitted to do.
40. Explain the following terms:
a) Idtibaa. b) Tawaaf. c) Istilaam. d) Ramal. e) Multazam. f) Zam Zam.
g) Sa'ee. h) Takbeer. i) Tahleel.
41. What does Ziyaarat mean?
42. What has Rasoolullah (ﷺ) mentioned regarding one who visits him and one who refrains from visiting him?
43. Mention three Ahadeeth regarding the sanctity of Madinah Tayyibah.
44. When should one perform the Ziyaarat, before or after Haj?
45. What should one do as he nears Madinah Munawwarah?
46. Explain in detail the procedure of reciting Salaam.
47. How should one convey the Salaams of people who have requested him to do so?
48. The Qabr on the right of Rasoolullah (ﷺ) is of Hazrat _____ and on his right is the Qabr of Hazrat _____.
49. What should one do after the Ziyaarat?
50. What are the other places of Ziyaarat?
51. Mention four Ahadeeth regarding Musjidun Nabawee (ﷺ).

تَعْلِيمُ الْحَقِّ
Ta'leemul Haq

Halaal
&
Haraam

Intoxicants & Drugs
Ribaa (Usury & Interest)
Meeras (Inheritance)
Nikaah (Marriage)
Waleema
Talaaq (Divorce) etc.

HALAAL AND HARAAM

Evil penetrates that flesh and blood which is nourished by Haraam and as a result does not allow the consumer of such Haraam to perform good and decent acts.

Rasoolullah (ﷺ) has therefore mentioned that the body which has been nourished through Haraam will not enter Jannah.

It is therefore imperative that one should always consume only that which is Halaal.

These brief notes cannot cover all the aspects of Halaal and Haraam. Therefore when in doubt or unaware with regards to the status of any commodity, query from your local Ulamaa.

PERMISSIBLE AND FORBIDDEN ITEMS OF MEAT

1. It is not permissible to consume the flesh or milk of those animals and birds that hunt their prey.
2. Haraam (forbidden) also are the following animals:

a) Pigs or Hogs	l) Hawks
b) Monkeys and Apes	j) Owls
c) Dogs	k) Falcons
d) Cats	l) Lizards
e) Elephants	m) Snakes
f) Donkeys or mules	n) Rats and Rodents
g) Lions and tigers	o) Worms and Insects
h) Jackals	
3. All types of fish are Halaal (permissible). However a fish that dies naturally in water and floats on the surface of the water is not permissible. The following animals and birds are halaal:

- | | |
|-------------|---------------------------|
| a) Cows | k) All Poultry |
| b) Goats | l) Duck |
| c) Sheep | m) Guinea Fowl |
| d) Camel | n) Turkey |
| e) Buck | o) Pigeon and Doves |
| f) Deer | p) Ostrich |
| g) Antelope | q) Qualls |
| h) Rabbit | r) Peacock |
| i) Buffalo | s) Partridge and sparrows |

5. To buy or eat meat or meat products sold by Non-Muslims is not permissible.
6. The flowing blood of animals is impure (najis) and the consumption of it is forbidden (Haraam).
7. All animals which die of natural causes are forbidden (Haraam).
8. All animals and poultry not slaughtered according to Islaamic rites (Zabah) are Haraam.
9. Haraam also are animals slaughtered without Bismillaah.

INTOXICANTS AND DRUGS

1. All alcoholic drinks and wines are forbidden (Haraam) and impure (Najis).
2. The consuming of drinks which intoxicates a person is forbidden (Haraam) be it in small or large quantities.
3. All drugs that lead a person to addiction are Haraam eg, dagga, hashish, opium etc.
4. The buying and selling or transporting of all Intoxicants is Haraam.

THE USE OF GOLD, SILVER AND SILK

Hazrat Huzalfah رضي الله عنه reports that Rasoolullah (صلى الله عليه وسلم) prohibited us from drinking and eating out of silver and gold utensils and from doning garments of silk and from sitting thereupon.

1. Men are not permitted to use gold or silver jewellery. The use of pure silk for men is also forbidden. However men are permitted to use rings made of silver only.
2. Women are permitted to use all types of jewellery either gold, silver or Imitation.
3. It has become fashion for men to use ear rings. Such emulation of Non-Muslims and females is Haraam (forbidden). Nabi (صلى الله عليه وسلم) has mentioned that the Curse of Allah is upon such men who emulate (copy) women (in dress and appearance) and the Curse of Allah is on such women who emulate (copy) men (in dress and appearance).

Besides jewellery, both males and females are forbidden the use of gold or silver utensils, combs, toothpicks, cutlery, containers, mirrors, pens, keys etc.

N.B. Gold and silver refer to pure gold and silver and not stainless steel or other metal polished with gold or silver coatings.

RULES REGARDING HAIR AND GROWING OF BEARD

1. It is preferred that the pubic and armpit hair be removed once a week or fortnightly. However to delay the removal of these hair beyond forty days is not permissible and sinful.
2. Women should grow their hair long and plait them. To shave the head or to cut the hair short is forbidden for women.
3. It is forbidden (Haraam) for women to expose their hair to strangers (ghair mahram).
4. For men to grow long hair and plait them is forbidden. Men are

allowed to shave the head or clip the hair but the hair should all be clipped or cropped equally (not short and long). The maximum length of hair for men ranges from below the earlobes to the shoulders.

5. The shaving of the beard is forbidden. The size of the beard should be at least a fists length all round.
6. It is preferred that the moustache be trimmed very short.
7. Regarding the clipping or paring of nails refer to page 55 of Ta'leemul Haq.

RIBAA: USURY AND INTEREST

Allah Ta'aala has forbidden usury or interest (the taking or giving of it) in very stern words.

الَّذِينَ يَأْكُلُونَ الرِّبَا لَا يَقُومُونَ إِلَّا كَمَا يَقُومُ الَّذِي يَتَخَبَّطُهُ الشَّيْطَانُ مِنَ الْمَسِّ ذَلِكَ بِأَنَّهُمْ قَالُوا إِنَّمَا الْبَيْعُ مِثْلُ الرِّبَا وَأَحَلَّ اللَّهُ الْبَيْعَ وَحَرَّمَ الرِّبَا.

"Those who eat Ribaa (Interest) will not stand except like the standing of a person touched by Shaitaan, leading him to insanity. This is because they say that 'Trading is just like Ribaa (Interest)' whereas Allah has permitted trading and forbidden Ribaa." (Al Qur'aan 2:275)

فَمَنْ جَاءَهُ مَوْعِظَةٌ مِنْ رَبِّهِ فَانْتَهَى فَلَهُ مَا سَلَفَ وَأَمْرُهُ إِلَى اللَّهِ وَمَنْ عَادَ فَأُولَئِكَ أَصْحَابُ النَّارِ هُمْ فِيهَا خَالِدُونَ.

"Whoever received the warning from his Lord and stopped (gave up eating or dealing in Interest) shall not be punished for the past. And his affairs are for Allah to judge. But whoever returns to Usury (Ribaa) they are the dwellers of the Fire of Hell." (Al Qur'aan 2:275)

يَمْحَقُ اللَّهُ الرِّبَا وَيُزِيهِ الصَّدَقَاتِ وَاللَّهُ لَا يُحِبُّ كُلَّ كَفَّارٍ أَتِيحٍ.

"Verily Allah will destroy Ribaa (Interest) and will give increase for Sadaqaat (Charity) and Allah does not like the disbelievers, Sinners." (Al Qur'aan 2:276)

يَا أَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا اتَّقُوا اللَّهَ وَذَرُوا مَا بَقِيَ مِنَ الرِّبَا إِن كُنْتُمْ مُؤْمِنِينَ
 "Oh Believers! Fear Allah! and give up what remains (due to you) from Ribaa hence forth if you are (True) believers."
 (Al-Qur'aan 2:278)

فَإِنْ لَّمْ تَفْعَلُوا فَأْذَنُوا بِحَرْبٍ مِنَ اللَّهِ وَرَسُولِهِ وَإِنْ تُبْشِرُوا فَلَكُمْ رُءُوسُ
 أَمْوَالِكُمْ لَا تَظْلِمُونَ وَلَا تُظْلَمُونَ.

"But if you do not do it (i.e. you do not fear Allah and his Messenger) then be warned of war from Allah and His Messenger. And if you repent you shall have your capital sum." (Al-Qur'aan 2:279)

Ribaa (Interest) is of two major kinds

1. Ribaa an-Nasla, i.e. interest lent on money. All forms of this interest (whether bank loans, overdraft facilities, mortgages, hire purchase, fixed deposits to gain interest) is Haraam and a major sin.
2. Ribaa al Fadl, i.e. exchanging superior quality articles for more of inferior quality articles of the same nature. eg. To exchange dates of superior quality for a greater amount of dates of an inferior quality. This is also interest.

Rasoolullah (ﷺ) has cursed the payer of interest, the receiver of interest, a proxy or representative for such a transaction, the scribe (writer) and the witnesses of such transactions.

The payer and receiver of interest are both equal in crime.

SOURCES OF FORBIDDEN INCOME

All income derived by the following means is totally Haraam.

1. Stealing / Theft;
2. Fraud;
3. Gambling;
4. Sale of forbidden items eg. Alcohol and wine, Haraam meat products etc.;
5. Usury - Interest;

6. Devouring the property of orphans unjustly;
7. The taking and giving of bribes;
8. Devouring the property of legal heirs, especially depriving sisters and minor heirs in estates (inheritance);
9. Buying and selling of stolen property (goods);
10. Selling of goods to a customer and concealing defects.

MEERAAS (INHERITANCE)

When a person dies all his goods and property should be distributed according to Islaamic principles.

It is compulsory that all the legal heirs be given their inheritance according to the Sharee'at. Nabi (ﷺ) said that a person who deprives an heir of his rightful due, Allah Ta'aala will deprive him of his share from Jannat.

Wealth of the deceased will be distributed in the following sequence:

1. Tajheez wa Takfeen, ie. Necessary funeral & burial expenditure.
2. His debts will be paid.
3. Any bequest made by the deceased will be paid, provided such bequests do not exceed one third of his total assets.

NB: No person is allowed to make bequests in favour of his Shar'ee heirs.

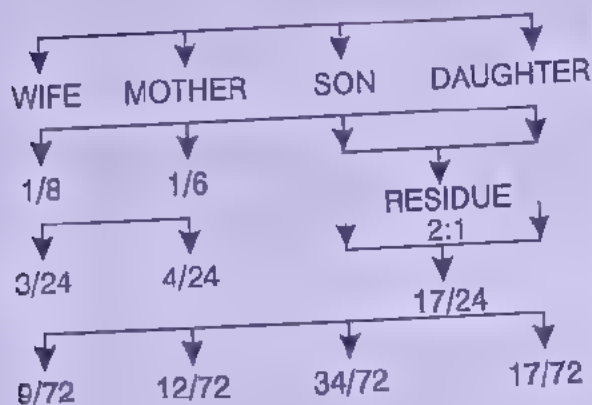
4. From the remainder of the estate the Shar'ee heirs will receive their respective shares. eg. The father and mother will each receive one sixth of the estate.
5. If the husband has any children the wife will receive one eighth of the estate and if he has no children she will receive 1/4. If the deceased wife has any children the husband will receive a quarter of the estate and if she has no children then he will receive 1/2 of the estate.
6. a.) If a person has only one daughter and no sons she receives 1/2 of the estate. b.) If a person has two or more daughters only and no sons then they will receive 2/3 of the estate.

7. a.) When the deceased has his own children, ie. sons and daughters then the deceased's brothers and sisters will not receive any share of the inheritance. b. If the deceased has no children of his own then the deceased's brothers and sisters will inherit (for the males twice the amount of the females i.e. two shares for males and one share for the females.)

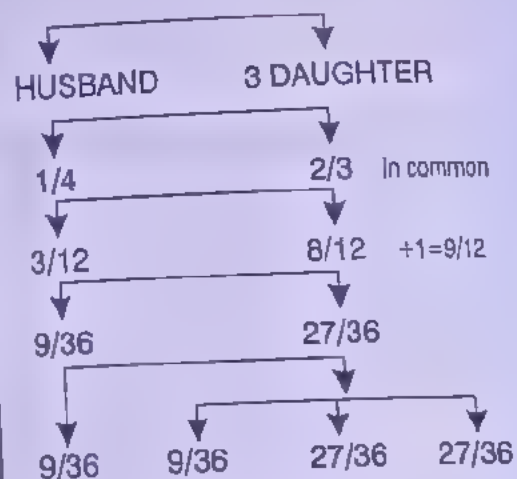
After paying Zawli Furooz (ie. father, mother, husband, wife, one or more daughters, only brothers and sisters) the remainder of the assets will be paid to the Asabaat, ie sons and daughters. The sons will receive twice as much as the daughter.

Here are 3 simple formulae for distribution of estates.

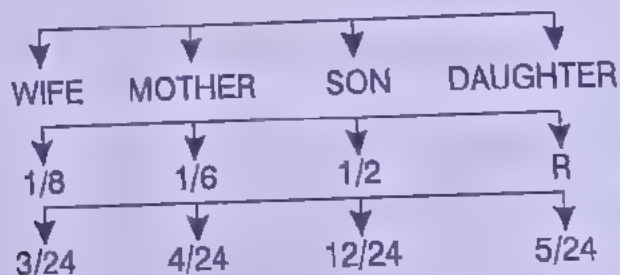
1. DECEASED



2. DECEASED



3. DECEASED



NIKAAH OR MARRIAGE

وَمِنْ آيَاتِهِ أَنْ خَلَقَ لَكُمْ مِنْ أَنْفُسِكُمْ أَزْوَاجًا لِتَسْكُنُوا إِلَيْهَا وَجَعَلَ بَيْنَكُمْ مَوَدَّةً وَرَحْمَةً إِنَّ فِي ذَلِكَ لَآيَاتٍ لِقَوْمٍ يَتَفَكَّرُونَ.

"And among His signs is this, that He created for you mates from among yourselves, that you may dwell in tranquillity with them, and He has put love and mercy (between your hearts). Verily in that are signs for those who reflect." (Holy Quran 30:21)

Hazrat Aboo Hurairah (رضي الله عنه) narrates that Rasoolullah (صلى الله عليه وسلم) has mentioned: "A woman is chosen due to four reasons, namely her wealth, her family lineage, her beauty and her Deen - Piety. Give preference to a woman having Deen. May your hands become dusty!" (An exclamation encouraging one to give attention to something important).

Hazrat Anas (رضي الله عنه) reports that Rasoolullah (صلى الله عليه وسلم) mentioned: "When a servant (person) marries, he has perfected half his Deen (Religion). For the remaining half he should fear Allah."

Nabi (صلى الله عليه وسلم) mentioned "Oh youth! Whoever of you has (the urge and) capability to fulfil his sexual desire should marry because it (Marriage/Nikah) will lower his gaze and is a protection for his private parts, and he who cannot marry should fast (in abundance) because this is for him a reducer of his sexual desire".

THE BENEFITS OF NIKAAH (Marriage)

The institution of Nikaah is as old as mankind because the first Nikaah that took place was that of Hazrat Aadam (عليه السلام) to Hazrat Hawwa (عليها السلام) in Paradise (Jannah).

1. Nikaah or marriage is a great bounty and favour of Allah Ta'aala.
2. Through Nikaah both males and females acquire chastity and through chastity, piety or Taqwaa. Both are saved from sin.
3. The heart and mind is set at ease and relaxed.
4. It is the only means of acquiring legitimate children.
5. Family life and social development is perfected.

RULES PERTAINING TO NIKAAH

1. For Nikaah to be valid a proposal by either the bridegroom or bride and acceptance by any one of them in the presence of Two Muslim male witnesses or one Muslim male and Two Muslim female witnesses is the least requirement.
2. A father or legal guardian or representative of the bride can also propose or accept on her behalf.
3. The preferred method of performing the Nikaah Ceremony is that the father, legal guardian or representative of the bride propose or accept the marriage on her behalf Preferably in the Musjid, in the presence of the bridegroom or his representative. It is best that the Nikaah be announced and held during the Friday or any congregational prayer.
4. The Khutbah or sermon before the Nikaah is masnoon (a preferred) practice of Nabi (ﷺ).
5. The amount of Mehr or Dowry which is paid to the bride should also be mentioned during the proposal. The minimum value of Mahr should be at least 30.6 grams of silver.

PERSONS TO WHOM NIKAAH IS FORBIDDEN

1. Nikaah or marriage is forbidden for males to the following persons:
 - a) Mother
 - b) Daughter
 - c) Sister
 - d) Father's Sisters (paternal aunt)
 - e) Mother's Sisters (maternal aunt)
 - f) Brother's Daughter (niece)
 - g) Sister's Daughters (niece)
 - h) Wife's Mother (mother-in-law)
 - i) Grandmothers (paternal and maternal)

- j) Granddaughters
 - k) Wife's Daughter (from a previous marriage)
 - l) The Wife's Sister as long as the Wife is in his marriage.
2. Females cannot marry the following:
- a) Father
 - b) Son
 - c) Brother
 - d) Father's Brother (peternal uncle)
 - e) Mother's Brother (maternal uncle)
 - f) Brother's Son (nephew)
 - g) Sister's Son (nephew)
 - h) Husband's Father
 - i) Grandfather
 - j) Grandson
 - k) Husband's Son (from previous marriage)
3. All relations by breast feeding are forbidden just as relationship by lineage (as explained above) are forbidden. eg. A person cannot marry a wet nurse whose milk he suckled in infancy neither can he marry her daughter or sister or father's sister or mother's sister etc.
4. Children that have been breast fed by the same woman become Haraam for each other though the above relationship (mentioned in 1 and 2) may not exist.
5. It is Haraam for Muslim males to marry Non-Muslim females and it is also forbidden for Muslim females to marry Non-Muslim males. This Nikaah is not valid.

WALEEMAH

1. Amongst the Sunnats after the marriage is that the husband should provide a meal to those closeby including the poor. This meal is called Waleemah.
2. The Waleemah meal should not be extravagant but rather according to the means of the husband.

3. When Nabi (ﷺ) married Hazrat Zaynab binte Jahsh (رضي الله عنها), the Waleemah consisted of meat and bread.
4. And when Nabi married Hazrat Safiya (رضي الله عنها) the Waleemah was Hees (a type of soup). Sometimes the Waleemah was only of dates, cheese and some butter.
5. According to a Hadeeth Nabi (ﷺ) said that the worst meal is that Waleemah in which the rich are invited and the poor are left out.
6. It is preferred to accept the invitation of Waleemah, provided there is no pride and pomp, showing off or any other un-Islamic activities included.

TALAAQ - DIVORCE

Regarding Talaaq (Divorce) Nabi (ﷺ) mentioned that the worst amongst the permissible acts in the sight of Allah is Talaaq (divorce).

Therefore families of the husband and wife should make maximum efforts to bring about Islaah i.e. to make up the marriage.

When all efforts have failed to resolve or stabilize a marriage, the husband may issue a divorce, (preferably Talaaqe Rajee).

Only the husband has the right to divorce his wife.

The wife cannot divorce a husband. The best cause according to the Command of Allah Ta'ala is Sulh - to maintain peace, love and compatibility between both husband and wife.

TYPES OF TALAAQ:

1. Talaaqe Rajee:

It is that Talaaq in which a person can take back his wife before the expiry of her 'Iddat - (waiting period of three menstrual cycles). In this case the divorce is annulled and there is no need to remarry or make Nikaah again. However, if the husband decides on taking her after the expiry of her 'Iddat, Nikaah will have to be repeated.

2. Talaaqe Baa-in:

It is that type of Talaaq in which the Nikaah is severed immediately.

- a) When Talaaqe Baa-in is pronounced then the wife becomes separated

from the husband immediately. He cannot recall her during the waiting period.

b) The husband can, however REMARRY her during the waiting period. After the waiting period, the divorced wife is free to either remarry the husband or any other man.

3. Talaaqe Mughallazah (Irrevocable Talaaq):

a) When a husband pronounces three Talaaq upon his wife by either saying "I Divorce you", "I Divorce you", "I Divorce you" or he says "I Divorce you with the three Talaaq", this marriage is now completely severed. After the waiting period of 3 menstrual cycles she cannot remarry her husband. She can only marry another man.

b) If this second husband divorces her after marriage then only can she marry the first husband.

MAINTENANCE OF THE WIFE

1. The husband is responsible for the maintenance of the wife as long as she is in his Nikaah.
2. Whether the wife is poor or rich, the husband is responsible for her food, shelter and clothing.
3. If the Nikaah is severed and she is divorced, then after the 'Iddat (waiting period) she will not be entitled to claim any maintenance.
4. The maintenance of the children is the responsibility of the husband even if the wife is divorced.

Part 16 contains short notes on some important aspects of another branch of Deen, namely Mu-'aamlaat. It should be realised that our Deen is not restricted to Aqaa-id and Ibaadaat but is rather made up of five branches, namely: Aqaa-id, Ibaadaat, Mu-'aamlaat, Mu-'aasharat and Akhlaaq. Thus regarding these other branches consult your local Ulamaa' and refer to authentic Kitaabs for details.

May Allah Ta'aala accept this humble effort, make it a means of guidance and a source of Sadaqah Jaariyah for the compiler and all those who assisted in its compilation. Ameen.

LETTERS REPRESENTING THE ARABIC ALPHABET

AA	ا	GH	غ
B	ب	F	ف
T	ت	Q	ق
S	ث	K	ك
J	ج	L	ل
H	ح	M	م
KH	خ	N	ن
D	د	W	و
ZH	ذ	H	ه
R	ر	A	ء
Z	ز	Y	ي
S	س	Diacritical Marks (Harkat)	
SH	ش	A	َ
S	ص	I	ِ
DH	ض	U	ُ
T	ط	VOWELTS:	
Z	ظ	EE	يَ
'A	ع	AA	أَ
		OO	وُ

Note



اداره امپیکس
idara impex

Publishers | Distributors | Exporters



All Praise is due to Allah, the Exalted, Lord of the universe. Blessings and peace be upon the last of the Prophets, Muhammad ﷺ, his family, companions and those who follow his footsteps till the end of time.

idara is honoured to present this revised and improved edition of the widely accepted book, "*Ta'leemul'Haq*". This is a new, coloured composition of the book with chapters relating to each of the five fundamentals of Islam (Testimony of Faith, Salaat, Saum, Zakaat and Hajj) printed in different colours for easier access to the reader. The presentation of the content has also been improved by providing appropriate tables, illustrations, infographics etc., wherever required. Important texts such as the Ayaats of the Holy Qur'an, their transliterations, headings, illustrations etc., have also been printed in vibrant colours for easier apprehension. We have also included the transliteration of almost all Arabic texts for readers who are not familiar with the language as well as Urdu texts wherever possible.



f t @ idarastore